

# OASIS DITA Language Specification Committee Draft 01





# OASIS DITA Language Specification

## Commitee Draft 01

**First Edition (February 2005)**

This edition applies to version 1.0 of the Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© OASIS 2005

© IBM 2001, 2004

---

# Contents

<b>Chapter 1. DITA elements . . . . .</b>	<b>1</b>	fragref . . . . .	45
alt . . . . .	1	groupchoice . . . . .	46
anchor . . . . .	1	groupcomp . . . . .	47
apiname . . . . .	2	groupseq . . . . .	48
area . . . . .	3	i . . . . .	49
audience . . . . .	3	image . . . . .	49
author . . . . .	5	imagemap . . . . .	51
b . . . . .	6	indexterm . . . . .	52
body . . . . .	6	indextermref . . . . .	53
boolean . . . . .	7	info . . . . .	54
brand . . . . .	8	itemgroup . . . . .	54
category . . . . .	8	keyword . . . . .	55
chdesc . . . . .	9	keywords . . . . .	56
chdeschd . . . . .	10	kwd . . . . .	56
chhead . . . . .	10	li . . . . .	57
choice . . . . .	11	lines . . . . .	58
choices . . . . .	12	link . . . . .	59
choicetable . . . . .	12	linkinfo . . . . .	61
choption . . . . .	14	linklist . . . . .	61
choptionhd . . . . .	15	linkpool . . . . .	64
chrow . . . . .	15	linktext . . . . .	67
cite . . . . .	16	lq . . . . .	67
cmd . . . . .	17	map . . . . .	69
cmdname . . . . .	18	menucascade . . . . .	70
codeblock . . . . .	18	metadata . . . . .	71
codeph . . . . .	19	msgblock . . . . .	71
colspec . . . . .	20	msgnum . . . . .	72
component . . . . .	21	msgph . . . . .	73
conbody . . . . .	22	navref . . . . .	73
concept . . . . .	23	navtitle . . . . .	74
context . . . . .	24	no-topic-nesting . . . . .	75
coords . . . . .	25	note . . . . .	75
copyrholder . . . . .	26	object . . . . .	77
copyright . . . . .	26	ol . . . . .	79
copyyear . . . . .	27	oper . . . . .	80
created . . . . .	28	option . . . . .	81
critdates . . . . .	28	othermeta . . . . .	82
dd . . . . .	29	p . . . . .	82
ddhd . . . . .	30	param . . . . .	83
delim . . . . .	31	parml . . . . .	85
desc . . . . .	31	parmname . . . . .	86
dita . . . . .	32	pd . . . . .	86
dl . . . . .	32	permissions . . . . .	87
dlentry . . . . .	33	ph . . . . .	88
dlhead . . . . .	34	platform . . . . .	89
draft-comment . . . . .	35	plentry . . . . .	89
dt . . . . .	36	postreq . . . . .	90
dthd . . . . .	37	pre . . . . .	91
entry . . . . .	38	prereq . . . . .	92
example . . . . .	39	prodinfo . . . . .	92
featnum . . . . .	41	prodname . . . . .	93
fig . . . . .	41	prognum . . . . .	93
figgroup . . . . .	42	prolog . . . . .	94
filepath . . . . .	42	propdesc . . . . .	94
fn . . . . .	43	properties . . . . .	95
fragment . . . . .	44	property . . . . .	97

prophead . . . . .	97
propdeschd . . . . .	98
proptypehd . . . . .	98
propvaluehd . . . . .	98
proptype . . . . .	98
propvalue . . . . .	99
pt . . . . .	100
publisher . . . . .	101
q . . . . .	101
refbody . . . . .	102
reference . . . . .	103
refsyn . . . . .	105
related-links . . . . .	106
relcell . . . . .	108
relcolspec . . . . .	109
relheader . . . . .	109
relrow . . . . .	110
reltable . . . . .	111
repsep . . . . .	112
required-cleanup . . . . .	112
resourceid . . . . .	113
result . . . . .	114
revised . . . . .	114
row . . . . .	115
screen . . . . .	117
searchtitle . . . . .	118
section . . . . .	119
sep . . . . .	119
series . . . . .	120
shape . . . . .	121
shortcut . . . . .	122
shortdesc . . . . .	122
simpletable . . . . .	123
sl . . . . .	125
sli . . . . .	126
source . . . . .	126
state . . . . .	127
stentry . . . . .	128
step . . . . .	128
stepresult . . . . .	130
steps . . . . .	130
steps-unordered . . . . .	131
stepxmp . . . . .	132
sthead . . . . .	132
strow . . . . .	133
sub . . . . .	134
substep . . . . .	134
substeps . . . . .	135
sup . . . . .	136
synblk . . . . .	137

synnote . . . . .	137
synnoteref . . . . .	138
synph . . . . .	139
syntaxdiagram . . . . .	140
systemoutput . . . . .	140
table . . . . .	141
task . . . . .	143
taskbody . . . . .	144
tbody . . . . .	145
term . . . . .	146
tfoot . . . . .	147
tgroup . . . . .	147
thead . . . . .	149
title . . . . .	150
titlealts . . . . .	151
tm . . . . .	151
topic . . . . .	152
topicmeta . . . . .	154
topicref . . . . .	155
topichead . . . . .	157
topicgroup . . . . .	158
tt . . . . .	159
tutorialinfo . . . . .	160
u . . . . .	160
uicontrol . . . . .	161
ul . . . . .	162
userinput . . . . .	162
var . . . . .	163
varname . . . . .	164
vrml . . . . .	165
vrmlist . . . . .	165
wintitle . . . . .	166
xref . . . . .	167

**Chapter 2. Sets of attributes by named group . . . . . 171**

%display-atts; . . . . .	171
%global-atts; . . . . .	172
%id-atts; . . . . .	172
%rel-atts; . . . . .	173
%select-atts; . . . . .	176
%univ-atts; . . . . .	177
%topicref-atts; . . . . .	177
%topicref-atts-no-toc; . . . . .	180

**Chapter 3. Appendix . . . . . 185**

xml:lang values . . . . .	185
outputclass processing . . . . .	185
keyref processing . . . . .	186

---

## Chapter 1. DITA elements

---

### alt

The alt element provides an element equivalent of the alt attribute on the image element. As an element, it provides direct text entry within an XML editor and is more easily accessed than an attribute for translation.

The use of the alt attribute is deprecated but still supported. The alt element is the preferred way of indicating alternative text for an image.

#### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

#### Examples

The markup for alt text within an image looks like this:

```
<image href="tip-ing.jpg"/>
  <alt>Here's a Tip!</alt>
</image>
```

---

### anchor

The <anchor> element is used for runtime integration of navigation. It provides an integration point that another map can point to in order to insert its navigation into the current navigation tree. It is currently supported by Eclipse output only.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, an anchor is defined with an ID of "a1". This ID can be referenced by the anchorref attribute on another map's map element.

```
<map title="MyComponent tasks">
<topicref navtitle="Start here" href="" toc="yes"> Start here
<navref mapref="othermap2.ditamap"/>
<navref mapref="othermap3.ditamap"/>
<anchor id="a1"/>
</topicref>
</map>
```

---

## apiname

The <apiname> element provides the name of an application programming interface (API) such as a Java class name or method name. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>Use the <apiname>document.write</apiname> method to create text output in the dynamically constructed view.</p>

---

## area

The area element supports the basic functionality of the HTML image map markup.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### Examples

```
<area>
  <shape>rect</shape>
  <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

See also `imagemap`.

---

## audience

The <audience> metadata element indicates, through the value of its type attribute, the intended audience for a topic. Since a topic can have multiple audiences, you can include multiple audience elements. For each audience you specify, you can identify the high-level task (*job*) they are trying to accomplish and the level of experience (*experiencelevel*) expected.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	<p>Indicates the kind of person for whom the content of the topic is intended. Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>user</b> A user of the product</p> <p><b>purchaser</b> A product purchaser</p> <p><b>administrator</b> A product administrator</p> <p><b>programmer</b> A programmer</p> <p><b>executive</b> An executive</p> <p><b>services</b> Someone who provides services related to the product</p> <p><b>other</b> Use the value specified by the othertype attribute</p>	(user   purchaser   administrator   programmer   executive   services   other)	#IMPLIED	No
othertype	Indicates an alternate audience type, when the type is not available in the type attribute value list. This value is used as the user-provided audience when the type attribute value is set to "other."	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
job	Indicates the high-level task the audience for the topic is trying to accomplish. Different audiences may read the same topic in terms of different high-level tasks; for example, an administrator may read the topic while administering, while a programmer may read the same topic while customizing. Allowable values are: installing, customizing, administering, programming, using, maintaining, troubleshooting, evaluating, planning, migrating, other.	installing   customizing   administering   programming   using   maintaining   troubleshooting   evaluating   planning   migrating   other	#IMPLIED	No
otherjob	If the job attribute value is "other" the value of this attribute is used to identify a kind of job other than the default ones provided by the job attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
experiencelevel	Indicates the level of experience the audience is assumed to possess. Different audiences may have different experience levels with respect to the same topic; for example, a topic may require general knowledge from a programmer, but expert knowledge from a user. Allowable values are:  <b>novice</b> A first time user. <b>general</b> The most common user. <b>expert</b> An experienced user.	(novice   general   expert)	#IMPLIED	No
name	Used to associate the audience element with values used in the audience attribute	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

For a command reference topic for experienced programmers, the following might be an appropriate indication of that audience:

```
<audience type="programmer" job="programming" experiencelevel="expert"/>
```

---

## author

The <author> metadata element contains the name of the topic’s author. The currently unsupported keyref attribute can point to another location where the author information is defined.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink representing a resource that defines the person or company named in the parent element. Typically you would use this attribute to cite the URL for the named entity’s “home page.” The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
type	Indicates the primary author of the content. Allowable values are:  <b>creator</b> The primary or original author of the content.  <b>contributor</b> An additional author who is not primary.	(author   contributor)	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
<author type="creator">Jane Roe</author>
<author type="contributor">John Doe</author>
</prolog>
```

## b

The bold (<b>) element is used to apply bold highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the uicontrol tag. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<p><b>STOP!</b> This is <b>very</b> important!</p>
```

## body

The <body> element is the container for the main content of a <topic>.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<topic>
<title>...</title>
<prolog>...</prolog>
<body> ... </body>
</topic>
```

---

## boolean

The <boolean> element is used to express one of two opposite values, such as yes or no, on or off, true or false, high or low, and so forth. The element itself is empty; the value of the element is stored in its *state* attribute, and the semantic associated with the value is typically in a specialized name derived from this element. If you need more than two values (for example, “yes,” “no” and “don’t care”) use the <state> element instead. This element is primarily for specialization, where it can be used to require a logical true or false designation in a particular part of the document.

**OASIS TC Note:** This element is deprecated. It is functionally equivalent to <state value=“yes|no”/>, which is recommended as its replacement in all cases.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
state	The state of the boolean element. Allowable values are: yes no	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

She said "<boolean state="yes"/>" when I asked her to marry me!

---

## brand

The <brand> element indicates the manufacturer or brand associated with the product described by the parent <prodinfo> element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prodinfo>
<prodname>...</prodname>
<vrmlist>
<brand>eServer</brand>
<series>iSeries</series>
<opsys>Linux</opsys>
</vrmlist>
</prodinfo>
```

---

## category

The <category> element can represent any category by which a topic might be classified for retrieval or navigation; for example, the categories could be used to group topics in a generated navigation bar. Topics can belong to multiple categories.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
<metadata>
  <category platform="Linux" product="EMacs" audience="editors"
    importance="high"></category>
</metadata>
</prolog>
```

---

## chdesc

The <chdesc> element is a description of an option that a user chooses while performing a step to accomplish a task. It explains why the user would choose that option, and might explain the result of the choice when it is not immediately obvious.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>
<choicetable>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
    <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
```

```

<chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
  <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>

```

---

## chdeschd

The <chdeschd> option provides a specific label for the list of descriptions of options that a user must choose to accomplish a step of a task. The default label overridden by <chdeschd> is **Description**.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<choicetable>
  <chhead>
    <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
    <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
    <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
    <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>

```

---

## chhead

The <chhead> element is a container inside the <choicetable> element that provides specific heading text to override the default **Options** and **Description** headings. The <chhead> element contains both a <choptionhd> and <chdeschd> element as a pair.



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
  <substeps>
    <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
    <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
  </substeps>
  <choicetable>
    <chhead>
      <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
      <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
    </chhead>
    <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
      <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
    <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
      <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  </choicetable>
</step>

```

---

## choice

Each <choice> element describes one way that the user could accomplish the current step.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step><cmd>Choose a server.</cmd>
  <choices>
    <choice>If you have a remote server you want to test on, type the
    IP address or hostname of the server here.</choice>

```

```

    <choice>If you want to do local testing, just type localhost.</choice>
</choices>
</step>

```

---

## choices

The <choices> element contains a list of <choice> elements. It is used when the user will need to choose one of several actions while performing the steps of a task.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step><cmd>Choose a server.</cmd>
<choices><choice>If you have a remote server you want to test on, type the
IP address or hostname of the server.</choice>
<choice>If you want to do local testing, just type localhost.</choice>
</choices>
</step>

```

---

## choicetable

The <choicetable> element contains a series of optional choices available within a step of a task.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns <b>for print output</b> . The values are totaled and made a percent. For example: relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*" <p>causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.</p> relcolwidth="90* 150*" <p>causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking (not currently supported). Columns are identified by a comma-delimited list of numbers (for example: 1,3).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>
```

```

<choicetable>
  <chhead>
    <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
    <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
    <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
    <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>

```

---

## choption

The <choption> element describes an option that a user could choose to accomplish a step of a task. In a user interface, for example, this might be the name of radio button.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<choicetable>
  <chhead>
    <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
    <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
    <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
    <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>

```

---

## choptionhd

The <choptionhd> element provides a specific label for the list of options that a user chooses from to accomplish a step. The default label for options is **Option**.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spcentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<choicetable>
  <chhead>
    <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
    <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
    <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
    <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>
```

---

## chrow

The <chrow> element is a container inside the <choicetable> element. The <chrow> element contains both a <choption> and <chdesc> element as a pair.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
  <substeps>
    <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
    <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
  </substeps>
  <choicetable>
    <chhead>
      <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
      <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
    </chhead>
    <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
      <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>

      <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
      <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  </choicetable>
</step>

```

---

## cite

The <cite> element is used when you need a bibliographic citation that refers to a book or article. It specifically identifies the title of the resource. Its *keyref* attribute allows the citation to be associated to other possible bibliographic processing (not supported yet).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up the location of the cited material, and potentially create a link to it.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>The online article <cite>Specialization in the Darwin Information Typing Architecture</cite> provides a detailed explanation of how to define new topic types.</p>

## cmd

The command (<cmd>) element is required as the first element inside a <step>. It provides the active voice instruction to the user for completing the step, and should not be more than one sentence. If the step needs additional explanation, this can follow the <cmd> element inside an info element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to associate the <cmd> with another task that provides more details for that particular step.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>

---

## cmdname

The command name (<cmdname>) element specifies the name of a command when it is part of a software discussion. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to associate the <cmdname> with the reference topic for the command, if the command name itself isn't sufficient.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## codeblock

The <codeblock> element represents lines of program code. Like the <pre> element, content of this element has preserved line endings and is output in a monospaced font. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <line>, and on elements derived from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED 'preserve'	Yes
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<codeblock>
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
  Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>

```

## codeph

The code phrase (<codeph>) element represents a snippet of code within the main flow of text. The code phrase may be displayed in a monospaced font for emphasis. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>The second line of the sample program code, <codeph>Do forever</codeph>, represents the start of a loop construct.</p>

## colspec

The <colspec> element contains a column specification for a table, including assigning a column name and number, cell content alignment, and column width.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
colnum	Indicates the number of a column in the table, counting from the first logical column to the last column.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colname	Specifies the table column name in which an entry is found.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are:  <b>left</b> Indicates left alignment of the text.  <b>right</b> Indicates right alignment of the text.  <b>center</b> Indicates center alignment of the text.  <b>justify</b> Justifies the contents to both the left and the right.	(left   right   center   justify   char)	#IMPLIED	No
colwidth	Describes the column width.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Tagging for this table is shown below.

Animal	Gestation
Elephant (African and Asian)	19-22 months
Giraffe	15 months
Rhinoceros	14-16 months
Hippopotamus	7 1/2 months

```
<table>
<tgroup cols="2">
<colspec colname="COLSPEC0" colwidth="121*"/>

      <colspec colname="COLSPEC1" colwidth="76*"/>
<thead>
<row>
<entry colname="COLSPEC0" valign="top">Animal</entry>
<entry colname="COLSPEC1" valign="top">Gestation</entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry>Elephant (African and Asian)</entry>
<entry>19-22 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Giraffe</entry>
<entry>15 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Rhinoceros</entry>
<entry>14-16 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Hippopotamus</entry>
<entry>7 1/2 months</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>
```

---

## component

The `<component>` element describes the component of the product that this topic is concerned with. For example, a product might be made up of many components, each of which is installable separately. Components might also be shared by several products so that the same component is available for installation with many products. This identification can be used to check cross-component dependencies when some components are installed, but not others. It could also be used to make sure that topics are hidden, removed, or flagged in some way when the component they describe isn't installed. Such process-control logic is not currently supported in DITA processing.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prodinfo>
  <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
  <vrmlist>
    <vrm version="v5r2"/>
  </vrmlist>
  <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

## conbody

The <conbody> element is the main body-level element for a concept. Like the body element of a general topic, <conbody> allows paragraphs, lists, and other elements as well as sections and examples. But <conbody> has a constraint that a section or an example can be followed only by other sections or examples.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<conbody>
  <p>If your workgroup has symbols files that are defined once for all
the books you author, you can define parameter entities for those symbols
within your SGML document. Parameter entities allow you to define an
imbed file of symbols, then reuse the same entities many times in your document.</p>
  <example>
    <p>Entity declarations have the following formats:</p>
    <ul>
      <li><!ENTITY symbol "text"> for a text entity</li>
      <li><!ENTITY name system "systemID"> for a file entity</li>
    </ul>
  </example>
</conbody>
```

---

## concept

The <concept> element is the top-level element for a topic that answers the question “what is?” Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface. Often, a concept is an extended definition of a major abstraction such as a process or function. It might also have an example or a graphic, but generally the structure of a concept is fairly simple.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. For example, you could create a series of topics in a compound (dita) or nested context for authoring convenience and then reference each topic individually into a new target location. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first topic into the calling topic markup that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for normal file links. To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Target elsewhere in the same file: conref="#topicid" In different file: conref="filename.xml" In different compound file: conref="filename.xml#topicid"</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es-es," then the label on the note, which is normally output as "Note" is now output in Spanish as "Nota." A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the DTD that is in use.	CDATA	"1.0" (version dependent; will increase)	Yes
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD.	CDATA	ui-d hi-d pr-d sw-d	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<concept id="concept">
  <title>Introduction to Bird Calling</title>
  <conbody>
    <p>If you wish to attract more birds to your Acme Bird Feeder, learn the art of bird calling. Bird calling is an efficient way to alert more birds to the presence of your bird feeder.</p>
    <example>
      <p>Bird calling requires learning:</p>
      <ul>
        <li>Popular and classical bird songs</li>
        <li>How to whistle like a bird</li>
      </ul>
    </example>
  </conbody>
</concept>

```

---

## context

The <context> section of a task provides background information for the task. This information helps the user understand what the purpose of the task is and what they will gain by completing the task. This section should be brief and does not replace or recreate a concept topic on the same subject, although the context section may include some conceptual information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
</context>
</task>
```

---

## coords

The coords element specifies the coordinates of the linkable region in an imagemap area.

The element defines the starting point and size of that area. It uses the following data for the appropriate shapes:

### Shape Data format

**rect** left-x, top-y, right-x, bottom-y

**circle** center-x, center-y, radius

**poly** x1, y1, x2, y2, ..., xN, yN. The first x and y coordinate pair and the last should be the same to close the polygon.

Pixels are recommended; they appear to work with all browsers.

**Note:** The behavior of image maps will depend on the browser on which they are rendered.

This element contains text data representing HTML coordinate data for image maps. The syntax of the coordinate data depends on the shape described by the coordinates.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### Examples

```
<area>
  <shape>rect</shape>
  <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

See also `imagemap`.

---

## copyright

The copyright holder (`<copyright>`) element names the entity that holds legal rights to the material contained in the topic.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<copyright>
<copyright year=2001></copyright>
<copyright holder=IBM></copyright>
</copyright>
```

---

## copyright

The `<copyright>` element is used for a single copyright entry. It includes the copyright years and the copyright holder. Multiple `<copyright>` statements are allowed.



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Indicates the legal status of the copyright holder. Allowable values are:  <b>primary</b> The copyright holder with first claim on the copyright  <b>secondary</b> An additional copyright holder who is not primary	(primary   secondary)	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<prolog>
<copyright>
<copyyear year="2001-04-12"></copyyear>
<copyholder>IBM</copyholder>
</copyright>
<copyright type=secondary>
<copyyear year="2002-03-03"></copyyear>
<copyholder>Schweetones Publishing, Inc.</copyholder>
</copyright>
</prolog>

```

## copyyear

The <copyyear> element contains the copyright year as specified by the *year* attribute.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
year	The year in YYYY format. See A Summary of the International Standard Date and Time Notation for background.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<copyright>
<copyyear year="2001"></copyyear>
<copyholder>IBM</copyholder>
</copyright>

```

---

## created

The <created> element specifies the document creation date using the *date* attribute.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
date	The document creation date. Enter the date as YYYY-MM-DD where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31. See A Summary of the International Standard Date and Time Notation for background.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
golive	The publication or general availability (GA) date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
expiry	The date when the information should be retired or refreshed, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<prolog>
<critdates>
<created date="2001-06-12"></created>
<revised golive="2001-08-20"></revised>
</critdates>
</prolog>

```

---

## critdates

The <critdates> element contains the critical dates in a document life cycle, such as the creation date and multiple revision dates.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
  <critdates>
    <created date="2001-06-12"></created>
    <revised golive="2001-08-20"></revised>
  </critdates>
</prolog>
```

## dd

The definition description (<dd>) element contains the description of a term in a definition list entry.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<dl>
  <dlhead>
    <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
    <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
  </dlhead>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>File Type</dt>
    <dd>Image's file extention</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Image Class</dt>
    <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Number of pages</dt>
    <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
  </dlentry>
</dlentry>
```

```

<dt>Fonts</dt>
<dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
</dentry>
</dl>

```

---

## ddhd

The definition descriptions heading (<ddhd>) element contains an optional heading or title for a column of descriptions or definitions in a definition list

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<dl>
<dlhead>
<dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
<ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
</dlhead>
<dentry>
<dt>File Type</dt>
<dd>Image's file extention</dd>
</dentry>
<dentry>
<dt>Image Class</dt>
<dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
</dentry>
<dentry>
<dt>Number of pages</dt>
<dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
</dentry>
<dentry>
<dt>Fonts</dt>
<dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
</dentry>
</dl>

```

---

## delim

Within a syntax definition, the delimiter (<delim>) element defines a character marking the beginning or end of a section or part of the complete syntax. Typical delimiter characters are the parenthesis, comma, tab, vertical bar or other special characters. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether the element it modifies is optional or required. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Adding</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var><delim>=</delim>
  <kwd>something</kwd>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

---

## desc

The <desc> element contains the description of the current element. A description should provide more information than the title.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at “%id-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<fig><title>The Handshake</title>
<desc>This image shows two hands clasped in a formal,
business-like handshake.</desc>
<image href="handshake.jpg" alt="The Handshake"/>
</fig>
```

---

## dita

The <dita> element provides a top-level container for multiple topics when you create documents using the ditabase DTD. The <dita> element lets you create any sequence of concept, task, and reference topics, and the ditabase DTD lets you further nest these topic types inside each other. The <dita> element has no particular output implications; it simply allows you to create multiple topics of different types at the same level in a single document.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

```
<dita>
  <concept id="batintro">...</concept>
  <reference id="batparts">...</reference>
  <task id="batfeeding">...</task>
  <task id="battraining">...</task>
  <task id="batcleanup">...</task>
</dita>
```

---

## dl

A definition list (<dl>) is a list of terms and corresponding definitions. The term (<dt>) is usually flush left. The description or definition (<dd>) is usually either indented and on the next line, or on the same line to the right of the term.

You can also provide an optional heading for the terms and definitions, using the <dlhead> element, which contains header elements for those columns. The default formatting for the <dlhead> looks like a table with a heading row.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are:  <b>yes</b> Indicates compact spacing. <b>no</b> Indicates expanded spacing.	(yes   no)	"yes"	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<d1>
<d1entry>
<dt>Bytes returned</dt>
<dd>The number of bytes of data returned.</dd>
</d1entry>
<d1entry>
<dt>Bytes available</dt>
<dd>The number of bytes of data available to be returned.</dd>
</d1entry>
<d1entry><dt>Handle</dt>
<dd>The returned handle value</dd>
</d1entry>
</d1>

```

---

## d1entry

In a definition list, each list item is defined by the definition list entry (<d1entry>) element. The definition list entry element includes a term <dt> and one or more definitions or descriptions <dd> of that term.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<dl>
  <dlhead>
    <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
    <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
  </dlhead>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>File Type</dt>
    <dd>Image's file extention</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Image Class</dt>
    <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Number of pages</dt>
    <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Fonts</dt>
    <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
  </dlentry>
</dl>

```

---

## dlhead

The <dlhead> element contains optional headings for the term and description columns in a definition list. The definition list heading contains a heading <dthd> for the column of terms and an optional heading <ddhd> for the column of descriptions.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<dl>
  <dlhead>
    <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
    <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
  </dlhead>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>File Type</dt>
    <dd>Image's file extention</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Image Class</dt>
    <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Number of pages</dt>
    <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Fonts</dt>
    <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
  </dlentry>
</dl>

```

---

## draft-comment

The <draft-comment> element allows simple review and discussion of topic contents within the marked-up content. Use the <draft-comment> element to ask a question or make a comment that you would like others to review. To indicate the source of the draft comment or the status of the comment, use the author, time or disposition attributes.

**Note:** Your processing system will provide a run-time flag or parameter to cause the content of this element to be specially displayed for draft output only. By default, it is stripped out to prevent publishing internal comments by mistake!.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
author	Designates the originator of the draft comment.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
time	Describes when the draft comment was created.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
disposition	Status of the draft comment. Values can be issue, open, accepted, rejected, deferred, duplicate, reopened, unassigned, or completed.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<draft-comment author="EBP">Where's the usage information for this section?</draft-comment>

## dt

The definition term <dt> element contains a term in a definition list entry.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<dl>
  <dlhead>
    <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
    <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
  </dlhead>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>File Type</dt>
    <dd>Image's file extention</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Image Class</dt>
    <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Number of pages</dt>
    <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Fonts</dt>
    <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
  </dlentry>
</dl>

```

---

## dthd

The definition term heading (<dthd>) element is contained in a definition list head (<dlhead>) and provides an optional heading for the column of terms in a description list.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<dl>
  <dlhead>
    <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
    <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
  </dlhead>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>File Type</dt>
    <dd>Image's file extention</dd>
  </dlentry>
  <dlentry>
    <dt>Image Class</dt>

```

```

    <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
</dentry>
<dentry>
  <dt>Number of pages</dt>
  <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
</dentry>
<dentry>
  <dt>Fonts</dt>
  <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
</dentry>
</dl>

```

---

## entry

The <entry> element defines a single cell in a table.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
colnum	Indicates the number of a column in the table, counting from the first logical column to the last column.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colname	Specifies the table column name in which an entry is found.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
namest	Specifies the first logical column that is included in a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
nameend	Specifies the last logical column that is included in a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
spanname	Indicates the name and definition of a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
morerows	Specifies the number of additional rows to add in a vertical span.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are:  <b>top</b> Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell).  <b>bottom</b> Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell).  <b>middle</b> Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell).	(top   bottom   middle)	"top"	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are:  <b>left</b> Indicates left alignment of the text.  <b>right</b> Indicates right alignment of the text.  <b>center</b> Indicates center alignment of the text.  <b>justify</b> Justifies the contents to both the left and the right.	(left   right   center   justify   char)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The tagging for the following table is shown below:

Asian elephant	<i>Elephas maximus</i>
African elephant (savannah)	<i>Loxodonta africana africana</i>
African elephant (forest)	<i>Loxodonta africana cyclotis</i>

```
<table>
<tgroup cols="2"><colspec colname="col1"/><colspec colname="col2"/>
<tbody>
<row><entry colname="col1">Asian elephant</entry>
<entry colname="col2"><i>Elephas maximus</i></entry> </row>
<row><entry colname="col1">African elephant (savannah)</entry>
<entry colname="col2"><i>Loxodonta africana africana</i></entry></row>
<row> <entry colname="col1">African elephant (forest)</entry>
<entry colname="col2"><i>Loxodonta africana cyclotis</i></entry>
</row> </tbody> </tgroup> </table>
```

## example

The <example> element is a section with the specific role of containing examples that illustrate or support the current topic. The <example> element has the same content model as <section>.

**Note:** The <example> element represents much more than IBMIDDoc’s <xmp> element. DITA uses <example> to contain both discussion and sample code or outputs, whereas in <xmp>, only the example data is supported. Hence, in a DITA topic, to represent programming code and results

within the discussion in an example, use the <codeblock> and <systemoutput> elements. For lines of text, use the <lines> element. For pre-formatted text such as email headers, use the <pre> element.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This example section is used in the DITA element references to demonstrate one or more ways of using DITA elements. For example, the codeblock element supports program listings:

```
/* simple CSS */
bold {font-weight: bold;}
```

whereas the lines element represents textual productions such as poetry:

```
I think that I shall never see
A poem lovely as a tree.
...
Poems are made by fools like me,
But only God can make a tree.
```

Joyce Kilmer  
*Trees*

Another common structure supported by the example element is the familiar command prototype followed by parameters:

To format a hard drive, use the **format** *volume* **/fs:** *file-system* command, where *volume* specifies the resource to be formatted

*lfs*: file-system

specifies the file system format to create (FAT32, NTFS, etc.)

---

## featnum

The <featnum> element contains the feature number of a product in the document metadata.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prodinfo>
  <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
  <vrmlist>
    <vrmlist version="v5r2"/>
  </vrmlist>
  <featnum>135</featnum>
  <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

---

## fig

The figure (<fig>) element is a display context (sometimes called an “exhibit”) with an optional title for a wide variety of content. Most commonly, the figure element contains an image element (a graphic or artwork), but it can contain several kinds of text objects as well. A title is placed inside the figure element to provide a caption to describe the content.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<fig expanse="column"><title>The Handshake</title>
<image href="handshake.jpg" alt="The Handshake"/>
</fig>
```

---

## figgroup

The <figgroup> element is used only for specialization at this time. Figure groups can be used to contain multiple cross-references, footnotes or keywords, but not multipart images. Multipart images in DITA should be represented by a suitable media type displayed by the <object> element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts,, %id-atts,, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## filepath

The <filepath> element indicates the name and optionally the location of a referenced file by specifying the directory containing the file, and other directories that may precede it in the system hierarchy. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>Uncompress the <filepath>gbrsh.gz</filepath> file to the <filepath>/usr</filepath> directory. Ensure that the <filepath>/usr/tools/data.cfg</filepath> path is listed in the execution path system variable.</p>

---

## fn

Use footnote (<fn>) to annotate text with notes that are not appropriate for inclusion in line or to indicate the source for facts or other material used in the text.

Footnote content is always skipped at the place where it was entered, and reproduced elsewhere, according to these rules:

- A footnote with no given *id* attribute is a **single-use** footnote. Upon output, it generates a number as a superscript “callout” that is linked to the placement of the footnote, usually at the bottom of the immediate printed page or at the end of the Web article. Subsequent footnotes in the same topic will have the next number in sequence for their callouts. If you enter a particular character in the *callout* attribute for the footnote, that character will be used as the superscript “callout” that is linked to the placement of the footnote.
- A footnote entered with an *id* attribute is a **use-by-reference** footnote. Upon output, it does not appear anywhere unless it has been referenced using an <xref> with the *type* attribute set to “fn”. The same callout behaviors will apply.
- Ordinarily, a footnote in one topic can’t be referenced in another topic. The previous behaviors are local to each topic. But by using the <conref> mechanism, you can instance another topic’s footnote into the local topic where it will then follow those behaviors:
  - If you use <fn conref="thatid"></fn> all by itself, the result will be the same as the single-use footnote entered literally in the same location.
  - If you use <fn conref="thatid" id="thisid"></fn>, then <xref href="thisid" type="fn"/>, the result will be the same as the use-by-reference model described before.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
callout	Specifies what character is used for the footnote link, for example a number or an alpha character. Numbers are the default. You could also specify a graphic for the footnote callout during output processing.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This markup:

```
The memory storage capacity of the computer is  
2 GB<fn callout="#">A GB (gigabyte) is equal to  
1 million bytes</fn> with error correcting support.
```

produces this output:

The memory storage capacity of the computer is 2 GB<sup>1</sup> with error correcting support.

**Note:** Footnote support may vary between different output types, depending on conventions and capabilities. For example, PDF output may lack support for the *callout* attribute, or footnotes may be collected as endnotes for certain types of Web publications.

---

## fragment

Within a syntax definition, a <fragment> is a labeled subpart of the syntax. The <fragment> element allows breaking out logical chunks of a large syntax diagram into named fragments. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

---

1. A GB (gigabyte) is equal to 1 million bytes

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="none">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <fragment>
    <groupchoice><kwd>*OVERLAP</kwd><kwd>*Prompt</kwd></groupchoice>
  </fragment>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

## fragref

The fragment reference (<fragref>) element provides a logical reference to a syntax definition fragment so that you can reference a syntax fragment multiple times. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A reference to a syntax diagram fragment element. The href attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the ID of the matching syntax diagram fragment: href="#topicid/fragmentid"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
importance	The attribute indicates whether the element it modifies is optional or required. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This markup example:

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="none">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <fragref href="#syntax/overlay"></fragref>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <fragment id="overlay">
    <title>Overlay</title>
    <groupchoice><kwd>*OVERLAP</kwd><kwd>*Prompt</kwd></groupchoice>
  </fragment>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

produces the following output:

```
CopyFile
>>-COPYF--input-filename*INFILE--output-filename--*OUTFILE----->
>>| Overlay |---input-filename+---output-filename+-----<
      '-*INFILE-----'  '-*OUTFILE-----'

Overlay
|---*OVERLAP+-----|
  '-*Prompt--'
```

## groupchoice

The <groupchoice> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. A group choice specifies that the user must make a choice about which part of the syntax to use. Groups are often nested. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether a variable is optional, required, or default. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required   default	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
    <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>

```

## groupcomp

The <groupcomp> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. The group composite means that the items that make up the syntax diagram will be formatted close together rather than being separated by a horizontal or vertical line, which is the usual formatting method. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether a variable is optional, required, or default. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required   default	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>

```

## groupseq

The <groupseq> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. Within the syntax definition, groups of keywords, delimiters and other syntax units act as a combined unit, and they occur in a specific sequence, as delimited by the <groupseq> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether a variable is optional, required, or default. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required   default	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

## i

The italic (*<i>*) element is used to apply italic highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the `uicontrol` tag. Italic highlighting generally means a font that is slanted for emphasis, but this may vary depending on your output formatting process. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>Unplug the unit *<i>before</i>* placing the metal screwdriver against the terminal screw.</p>

## image

Include artwork or images in a DITA topic by using the `<image>` element. The `<image>` element has optional attributes that indicate whether the placement of the included graphic or artwork should be inline (like a button or icon), or on a separate line for a larger image. An `href` attribute is required on the image element, as this attribute creates a pointer to the image, and allows the output formatting processor to bring the image into the text flow. To make the intent of the image more accessible for users using screen readers or text-only readers, always include a description of the image’s content in the `alt` attribute.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	The relative path or URL to the GIF or JPEG image. The href attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: href=" ../images/construction.gif"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to refer to the <image> by a key rather than referencing it directly.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
alt	Alternative text that describes the image to provide accessibility to page readers, or provides a text description when an image cannot be displayed by the user's software.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
longdescref	A reference to a textual description of the graphic. This attribute supports creating accessible content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
height	Indicates the maximum height of an image.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
width	Indicates the maximum width of an image.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Controls the horizontal alignment of an image when placement is specified as "break." Allowable values (processor-validated) are: left, right, center, and current.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
placement	Indicates whether an image should be displayed inline or separated from the surrounding text. The default is inline. Allowable values are: inline or break.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<image href="bike.gif" alt="Two-wheeled bicycle" placement="break"/>
```



---

## imagemap

The `imagemap` element supports the basic functionality of the HTML “client-side” image map markup. `Imagemap` allows you to designate a linkable area or region over an image, allowing a link in that region to display another topic.

An HTML client-side image map binds an image to the navigation structure (the “map”) by means of an ID association from the map to the image. In contrast, the DITA version of `imagemap` markup simply includes the target image as the first required element in the markup, followed by a sequence of area elements that represent the links associated with the contained image.

An `imagemap` structure can be output either to a standard HTML image map or to alternative forms of navigation (such as table-based image maps). When output as PDF, the minimal form would be to represent at least the image; advanced PDF output processors should be able to provide equivalent region-oriented hyperlinks.

The `xref` content contains the intended alternative text or hover text for the map area.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
<code>%display-atts;</code> (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “ <code>%display-atts;</code> ” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
<code>%univ-atts;</code> ( <code>%select-atts;</code> , <code>%id-atts;</code> , <code>translate</code> , <code>xml:lang</code> )	A set of related attributes, described at “ <code>%univ-atts;</code> ” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
<code>spectitle</code>	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
<code>outputclass</code>	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “ <code>outputclass</code> processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
<code>%global-atts;</code> ( <code>xtrf</code> , <code>xtrc</code> )	A set of related attributes, described at “ <code>%global-atts;</code> ” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
<code>class</code>	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The <code>class</code> attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### Examples

A simple `imagemap` looks like this (note that the rendering will depend on how this markup is supported for particular output formats):

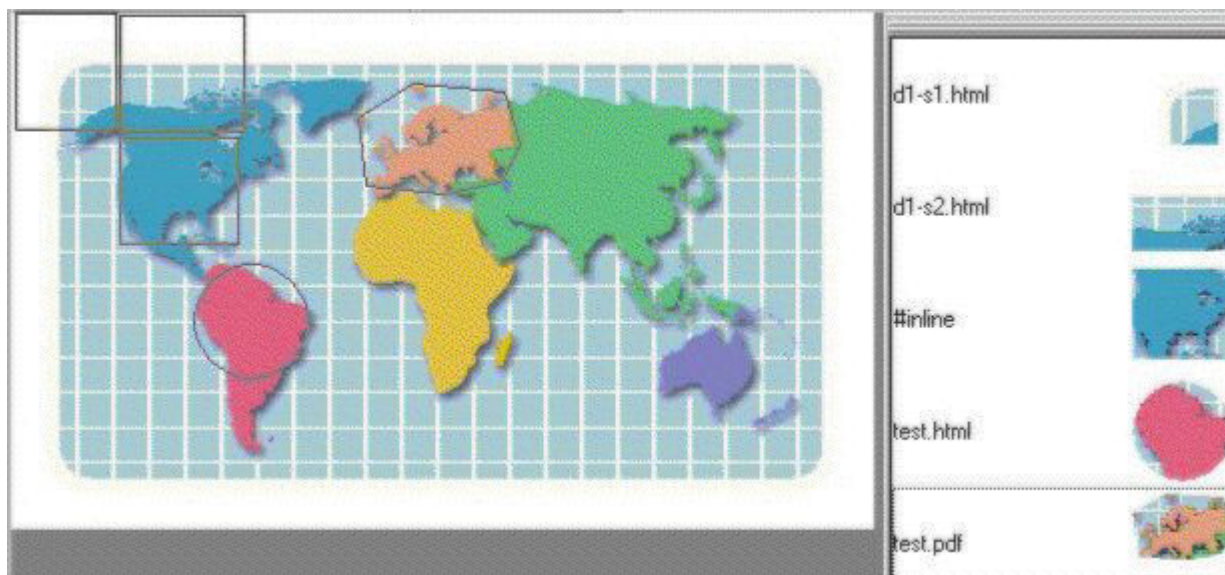
```
<imagemap>
<image href="imagemapworld.jpg"></image>
<area><shape>rect</shape><coords>2,0,53,59</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s1.xml">Section 1</xref>
</area>
```

```

<area><shape>rect</shape><coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s2.xml"></xref>
</area>
<area><shape>rect</shape><coords>54,62,114,116</coords>
  <xref href="#inline" type="topic"></xref>
</area>
<area><shape>circle</shape><coords>120,154,29</coords>
  <xref format="html" href="test.html"></xref>
</area>
<area><shape>poly</shape>
  <coords>246,39,200,35,173,52,177,86,215,90,245,84,254,65</coords>
  <xref format="pdf" href="test.pdf"></xref>
</area>
</imagemap>

```

The areas defined correspond to this graphic image; with the areas visible:



The values for use in the shape and coords elements must follow the guidelines defined for image maps in HTML 4.1, <http://www.w3.org/TR/html401/struct/objects.html#edef-MAP>

## indexterm

An <indexterm> is an index entry. You can nest entries to create multi-level indexes. The content is not output as part of topic content, only as part of the index.

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any keyword or indexterm elements in the <keywords> element are placed in the Web page metadata. In addition, the indexterms are added to supported index processing (for example, for print versions).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<purpose>An indexterm is an index entry. You can nest entries to
create multi-level indexes.<indexterm>indexterm</indexterm>
<indexterm>Valid in Many Places elements</indexterm>indexterm</indexterm>
</indexterm></purpose>
```

## indextermref

An `<indextermref>` is a reference to an index entry in a lookup table used by the indexing process. If you want to create index markers pointing to referenced items, but only want page numbers instead of separate index entries to be generated, use the index term reference `<indextermref>` element. This adds the page number of the reference to the index without creating a separate index entry.

**Note:** Not currently supported in DITA processing. Since the equivalent processing can be provided by `indexterm`'s `keyref` attribute with no loss of semantics, this element might be deprecated in the future.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to point to an <code>&lt;indexterm&gt;</code> and to change what it points to for different contexts.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<p>Use <indextermref keyref="yellow"/> lemon zest to add a tangy citrus
flavor to the cake icing.</p>
```

---

## info

The information element (<info>) occurs inside a <step> element to provide additional information about the step.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step><cmd>Type a name for the widget.</cmd>
<info>The widget name is created when you configure the widget
in the Widget Configuration Dialog. It is not an actual class
name or file name, just a label for the widget as used in this
application.</info>
</step>
```

---

## itemgroup

The <itemgroup> element is reserved for specialization of DITA. As a container element, it can be used to sub-divide or organize elements that occur inside a list item, definition, or parameter definition.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<li>Second point of a list.
  <itemgroup>related discourse</itemgroup>
</li>
```

## keyword

The <keyword> element identifies a keyword or token, such as a single value from an enumerated list, the name of a command or parameter, or a lookup key for a message (contrast with term).

Specialized elements derived from <keyword> may also have extended processing, such as different formatting or automatic indexing. If the *keyref* attribute is used, the keyword can be turned into a hyperlink on output (not currently supported).

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any <keyword> or <indexterm> elements in the <keywords> element are placed in the Web page metadata. In addition, any index terms in this context are also used for supported index processing (for example, for print versions).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to associate the <keyword> with another topic that provides more details for that particular keyword.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>The <keyword>assert</keyword> pragma statement allows messages to be passed to the emulator, pre-compiler, etc..

---

## keywords

The <keywords> element contains a list of keyword entries (using indexterm or keyword markup) that can be used by a search engine.

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any <keyword> or <indexterm> elements in the <keywords> element are placed in the Web page metadata. In addition, any index terms in this context are also used for supported index processing (for example, for print versions).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The following example is metadata from an installation task:

```
<prolog>
  <keywords>
    <keyword>installing</keyword>
    <keyword>uninstalling</keyword>
    <keyword>prerequisites</keyword>
    <keyword>helps</keyword>
    <keyword>wizards</keyword>
  </keywords>
</prolog>
```

---

## kwd

The <kwd> element defines a keyword in a syntax definition. A keyword must be typed or output, either by the user or application, exactly as specified in the syntax definition. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to associate the <kwd> with another topic that provides more details for that particular keyword.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether a variable is optional, required, or default. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required   default	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>

```

## ii

A list (<li>) item is a single item in an ordered <ol> or unordered <ul> list. When a DITA topic is formatted for output, numbers and alpha characters are usually output with list items in ordered lists, while bullets and dashes are usually output with list items in unordered lists.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<ul>
<li>This is an item in an unordered list.</li>
</ul>
```

## lines

The <lines> element may be used to represent dialogs, lists, text fragments, and so forth. The <lines> element is similar to <pre> in that hard line breaks are preserved, but the font style is not set to monospace, and extra spaces inside the lines are not preserved.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <lines>, and on elements derived from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED ‘preserve’	Yes
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No



```

On a trip to the beach, don't forget:
<lines>
suntan lotion
sunglasses
a beach towel
</lines>

```

---

## link

The <link> element defines a relationship to another topic. Links represent the types and roles of topics in a web of information, and therefore represent navigational links within that web. The parent structures of link allow authors to define named groups and even sort orders that can be applied to sets of links.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or to another topic in the same file or in another file. The href attribute identifies the destination of the cross-reference link using conventional URL syntax:  <pre>href="myfile.xml" type="concept" href="mything.pdf" format="pdf"</pre> <p>If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&amp;#amp;) should be used to indicate that character</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%rel-atts; (type, role, otherrole)	A set of related attributes, described at “%rel-atts;” on page 173	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is "dita".</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to "dita"</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	<p>The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current topic and the target resource. Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content, and should be accessed and copied to the output directory. Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. The default is local.</p>	(local   peer   external)	#IMPLIED	No
query	<p>Lists query criteria for topicref, or uses topicref's metadata as query criteria. The query pulls in matching topics under the current one if the title is present, or replaces the current location if title is not present.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<related-links>
<linklist><title>Related Concepts</title>
<link href="czover.htm#sqljsupp">
<linktext>SQLJ support in VisualAge for Java</linktext></link>
<link href="czesqlj.htm#sqljemb">
<linktext>Embedded SQLJ</linktext></link>
</linklist>
</related-links>
```

---

## linkinfo

The <linkinfo> element allows you to place a descriptive paragraph following a list of links in a linklist element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<linklist>
  <title>Related tasks</title>
  <link href="debug.dita" type="task"></link>
  <link href="repair.dita" type="task"></link>
  <link href="test.dita" type="task"></link>
  <linkinfo>To repair a reciprocating widget,
you must follow the instructions very carefully. Note
the sequence to follow. Do it.</linkinfo>
</linklist>
```

---

## linklist

The <linklist> element defines an author-arranged group of links. Within <linklist>, the organization of links on final output is in the same order as originally authored in the DITA topic file.

There are two ways to organize related information links: add them all in no particular order and let the output formatting processor sort them using the <linkpool> or <related-links> elements, or pre-group them using one or more <linklist> elements. When you pre-group them using <linklist>, then the order of the links as you created them is preserved during the output formatting process.

Attributes set on <linklist> are inherited by its descendants. For example, if you've got a <linklist> that contains all external links, you can set *scope="external"* on that outer<linklist> element and thereby leave it off the nested content of the element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Allowed values are: unordered sequence choice family.	(unordered   sequence   choice   family)	"unordered"	No
duplicates	Specifies whether or not duplicate links will be filtered out of a linklist. Allowable values are: "yes" (allow duplicate links), or "no" (filter out duplicate links). In general, duplicate links in linklists are preserved, all other duplicates in other contexts are removed. Note that links are regarded as duplicates only if their content plus all attributes match. Currently not supported in DITA processing.	#IMPLIED	The attribute value is ignored. The actual function is currently processor-dependent.	No
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the <linklist> and its links are derived. This would be automatically generated by the same process that created the map from the <linklist>, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> is manually created by the author in the <related-links> section,, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%rel-atts; (type, role, otherrole)	A set of related attributes, described at "%rel-atts;" on page 173	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is "dita".</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to "dita"</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	<p>The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current topic and the target resource. Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content, and should be accessed and copied to the output directory. Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. The default is local.</p>	(local   peer   external)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	<p>Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	<p>A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172</p>	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>...</taskbody>
  <related-links>
    <linklist>
      <title>Related Concepts</title>
    </linklist>
    <linklist>
      <title>Related Tasks</title>
    </linklist>
  </related-links>
</task>

```

---

## linkpool

The <linkpool> element defines a group of links that have common characteristics, such as type or audience or source. Within <linkpool>, the organization of links on final output is determined by the output process, not by the order that the links actually occur in the DITA topic file.

There are two ways to organize related information links: add them all in no particular order and let the output formatting processor sort them using the <linkpool> or <related-links> elements, or pre-group them using one or more <linklist> elements. When you pre-group them using <linklist>, then the order of the links as you created them is preserved during the output formatting process.

Attributes set on <linkpool> are inherited by its descendants. For example, if you've got a <linkpool> that contains all external links, you can set *scope="external"* on that outer<linkpool> element and thereby leave it off the nested content of the element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Allowed values are: unordered sequence choice family.	(unordered   sequence   choice   family)	"unordered"	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
duplicates	Specifies whether or not duplicate links will be filtered out of a linklist. Allowable values are: "yes" (allow duplicate links), or "no" (filter out duplicate links). In general, duplicate links in linklists are preserved, all other duplicates in other contexts are removed. Note that links are regarded as duplicates only if their content plus all attributes match. Currently not supported in DITA processing.	#IMPLIED	The attribute value is ignored. The actual function is currently processor-dependent.	No
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the <linklist> and its links are derived. This would be automatically generated by the same process that created the map from the <linklist>, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> is manually created by the author in the <related-links> section,, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%rel-atts; (type, role, otherrole)	A set of related attributes, described at "%rel-atts;" on page 173	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is "dita".</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to "dita"</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	<p>The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current topic and the target resource. Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content, and should be accessed and copied to the output directory. Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. The default is local.</p>	(local   peer   external)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	<p>Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	<p>A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172</p>	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<related-links>
<linkpool collection-type="family" type="task">
<link href="generalfaq.html#installing" role="parent">
<linktext>Installing the eReview client</linktext></link>
<link href="register.html#newuser" role="sibling">
<linktext>Register as new eReview user</linktext></link>
</linkpool>
</related-links>
```

## linktext

The <linktext> element provides the literal label or line of text for a link. In most cases, the text of a link can be resolved during processing by cross reference with the target resource. Use the <linktext> element only when the target cannot be reached, such as when it is a peer or external link.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<link href="tzover.htm#accsqlj">
<linktext>Accessing relational data with SQLJ</linktext>
</link>
```

## lq

The long quote (<lq>) element indicates content quoted from another source. Use the quote element <q> for short, inline quotations, and long quote <lq> for quotations that are too long for inline use, following normal guidelines for quoting other sources. You can store a URL to the source of the quotation in the *href* attribute.

### Future DITA considerations:

Bibliographic citations obviously are more complex than can be supported by a URL alone. Typical alternate addressing schemes include ISBN, Dewey Decimal, floor/aisle/shelf number, catalog number, Web publisher query link, newspaper name/date/section/page#, and many others, depending on the media, conventions for addressing, and the amount of additional metadata required to describe a bibliographic resource (such as prescribed by MLA citation guidelines).

Many external repositories of bibliographic descriptions already exist. The still-to-be-implemented keyref is an application-independent way to index a quote to a more complete bibliographic description for a resource that exists elsewhere (perhaps in other DTDs or databases).

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink representing a bibliographic citation to resources that can be accessed by browsers (meaning a URL). See keyref processing for information about alternate ways to indicate other, non Web-accessible bibliographic resources. The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax: href="myfile.xml" type="concept" href="mything.pdf" format="pdf"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
type	Indicates the location of the source of the quote. Allowable values are: <b>external</b> the href is to a Web site <b>internal</b> the href is to a DITA topic <b>bibliographic</b> the href is to a specialized bibliographic topic. Currently not supported in DITA.	(external   internal   bibliographic)	#IMPLIED	No
reftitle	The title of the document or topic being quoted.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>This is the first line of the address that Abraham Lincoln delivered on November 19, 1863 for the dedication of the cemetery at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.</p>  
 <lq>Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal.</lq>

## map

The <map> element is used to define a map which describes the relationships among a set of DITA topics. Maps consist of references to topics organized into hierarchies and tables. Maps provide a way to express these relationships in a single common format that can be used for different outputs.

The containing element for a map is the <map> element, which can take title and id attributes. Within the map, use the <topicref> element to add and organize references to the topics. You can use the map element to set default attribute values for all topicrefs in the map.

While the Title attribute on a map is optional, the Title attribute is required by the Eclipse help system. The primary XML table of contents must have a title (label in Eclipse), in order for that help's table of contents to load.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
title	An identifying title for this element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
id	This attribute is only used for debugging purposes to tell where generated links came from.	ID	#IMPLIED	No
anchorref	Identifies a location within another map file where this map will be anchored (referenced). For example, "anchorref=map1.ditamap/a1" causes this map to be referenced from within the map1.ditamap file at anchor point a1.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts;" on page 177.	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the DTD that is in use.	CDATA	"1.0" (version dependent; will increase)	Yes
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, there are six topicrefs. They are nested and have a hierarchical relationship. Bats.xml is the parent topic and the other topics are its children.

```
<map title="Bats" id="mybats"> Bats
  <topicref href="bats.dita" type="topic"
    <topicref href="batcaring.dita" type="task"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batfeeding.dita" type="task"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batsonar.dita" type="concept"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batguano.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
    <topicref href="bathistory.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

## menucascade

The <menucascade> element is used to document a series of menu choices, or to show any choice on a menu from which the user needs to choose. The <menucascade> element contains one or more user interface control (<uicontrol>) elements, for example: Start > Programs > Accessories > Notepad. If there is more than one <uicontrol> element, the formatter may show connecting characters between the menu items to represent the menu cascade. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This example:

```
<menucascade>
  <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol>Programs</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol>Accessories</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol>Notepad</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

produces this output: **Start** → **Programs** → **Accessories** → **Notepad**

---

## metadata

The <metadata> section of the prolog contains information about a topic such as audience and product information. Metadata can be used by computational processes to select particular topics or to prepare search indexes or to customize navigation.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <audience type="user" job="using" experiencelevel="novice"/>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

---

## msgblock

The message block (<msgblock>) element contains a multi-line message or set of messages. The message block can contain multiple message numbers and message descriptions, each enclosed in a <msgnum> and <msgph> element. It can also contain the message content directly. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <lines>, and on elements derived from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED 'preserve'	Yes
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>A sequence of failed password attempts generates the following characteristic message stream:</p>

```
<msgblock>
I:0
S:3
I:1
S:3
I:1
S:4
S:99 (lockup)
```

---

## msgnum

The message number (<msgnum>) element contains the number of a message produced by an application or program. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the text message, <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>

## msgph

The message phrase (<msgph>) element contains the text content of a message produced by an application or program. It can also contain the variable name (varname) element to illustrate where variable text content can occur in the message. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the text message, <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>

## navref

The <navref> element references a map file from within a map file. The reference is resolved at runtime for Eclipse navigation, typically to pull together the navigation for multiple components into a product navigation. This element is for runtime resolution of references, and is for navigation only. **It is currently only supported by Eclipse output.**

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
mapref	Specifies the URL (local filename, at least) of the map file to reference. This element is for runtime resolution of references, and is for navigation only. <b>It is currently only supported by Eclipse output.</b>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, the map titled “MyComponent tasks” references the maps “othermap2.ditamap” and “othermap3.ditamap”.

```
<map title="MyComponent tasks">
<topicref navtitle="Start here" href="" toc="yes"> Start here
<navref mapref="../com.ibm.xml.doc/othermap1.ditamap"/>
<navref mapref="../com.ibm.xml.doc/othermap2.ditamap"/>
</topicref>
</map>
```

---

## navtitle

The navigation title (<navtitle>) element is one of a set of alternate titles that can be included inside the <titlealts> element. This navigation title may differ from the first level heading that shows in the main browser window. Use <navtitle> when the actual title of the topic isn’t appropriate for use in navigation panes or online contents (for example, because the actual title is too long or needs stated in terse, imperative voice in the navigation).

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at “%id-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<task id=progexample">
  <title>Publishing a DITA information set in PDF</title>
  <titlealts><navtitle>Publishing in PDF</navtitle></titlealts>
  <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```



---

## no-topic-nesting

The <no-topic-nesting> element is a placeholder in the DITA architecture. It is not actually used by the DITA DTDs; it is for use only when creating a customized DTD where the information designer wants to eliminate the ability to nest topics. **Not for use by authors.**

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## note

A <note> element contains information, differentiated from the main text, which expands on or calls attention to a particular point.

**Tip:** Variant types of note (tip, caution, danger, restriction, etc.) can be indicated through values selected on the type attribute. This note is typed as a “tip.”

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	<p>Defines the type of a note. For example, if the note is a tip, the word <b>Tip</b> is used to draw the reader’s attention to it. If type is set to other, the value of the othertype attribute is used. If you use othertype, there needs to be a stylesheet or transform override that does something with the information, or it will be ignored. Allowable values for the type attribute are:</p> <p><b>note</b> This is just a note.</p> <p><b>attention</b> Please pay extra attention to this note.</p> <p><b>caution</b> Care is required when proceeding. For example: &lt;note type="caution"&gt;Contents may be erased.&lt;/note&gt;</p> <p>produces:</p> <p><b>CAUTION:</b> <b>You may reformat your hard drive.</b></p> <p><b>danger</b> Important! Be aware of this before doing anything else. For example: &lt;note type="danger"&gt;You may hurt yourself!&lt;/note&gt;</p> <p>produces:</p> <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <p><b>You may hurt yourself!</b></p> </div> <p><b>fastpath</b> This note will speed you on your way.</p> <p><b>important</b> This note is important.</p> <p><b>remember</b> Don’t forget to do what this note says.</p> <p><b>restriction</b> You can’t do what this note says.</p> <p><b>tip</b> This is a fine little tip.</p> <p><b>other</b> This is something other than a normal note.</p>	(note   tip   fastpath   restriction   important   remember   attention   caution   danger   other)	"note"	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
othertype	Indicates an alternate note type, when the type is not available in the type attribute value list. This value is used as the user-provided note title when the type attribute value is set to "other."	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This example:

```
<note type="tip">Thinking of a seashore, green meadow, or cool mountain overlook can help you to relax and be more patient.</note>
```

produces this result:

**Tip:** Thinking of a seashore, green meadow, or cool mountain overlook can help you to relax and be more patient.

---

## object

DITA’s <object> element corresponds to the HTML <object> element. The <object> element allows authors to include animated images, applets, plug-ins, ActiveX controls, video clips, and other multimedia objects in a topic for rendering after transformation to HTML.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
declare	When this attribute is set to declare, the current object definition is a declaration only. The object must be instantiated by a later nested object definition referring to this declaration.			No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
classid	Contains a URL that specifies the location of an object's implementation. It can be used together with the data attribute which is specified relative to the value of the codebase attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
codebase	Specifies the base path (a URL) used for resolving the URL values given for classid, data, and archive attributes. If codebase is not set, the default is the base URL of the current document.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
data	Contains a reference to the location of an object's data. If this attribute is a URL, it is specified relative to the value of the codebase attribute. If this attribute is set, the type attribute should also be set.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Indicates the content type for the data specified by the data attribute. This attribute should be set when the data attribute is set to avoid loading unsupported content types.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (No default type)	No
codetype	Indicates the content type for the data specified by the classid attribute. This attribute should be set when the classid attribute is set to avoid loading unsupported content types. If this attribute value is not set, the default is the value of the type attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
archive	Specifies a space-separated list of URLs indicating resources needed by the object. These resources may include those URLs specified by the classid and data attributes. Preloading these resources usually results in faster loadtimes for objects. The URLs in the list should be relative to the URL specified in the codebase attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
standby	Contains a message to be displayed while an object is loading.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
height	Indicates the maximum height of an image.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
width	Indicates the maximum width of an image.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
usemap	Indicates that a client-side image map is to be used. An image map specifies active geometric regions of an included object and assigns a link to each region. When a link is selected, a document may be retrieved or a program may run on the server.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
name	Submit the object as part of a form.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
tabindex	Position the object in tabbing order.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
longdescref	A reference to a textual description of the graphic. This attribute supports creating accessible content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Output processors may need to modify data to enable compatible function across various browsers, so these examples are only representative:

```

<p>Cutting the keys from the system unit:</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
  codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
  flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
  data="cutkey370.swf"
  type="application/x-shockwave-flash"
  height="280"
  width="370"
  id="cutkey370">
  <desc>A description of the task</desc>
  <param name="movie" value="cutkey370.swf"/>
  <param name="quality" value="high"/>
  <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
</object>

<p>What's EIM?</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
  codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
  flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
  data="eim.swf"
  height="400"
  width="500"
  id="eim">
  <desc>Some great, glorious info</desc>
  <param name="movie" value="eim.swf"/>
  <param name="quality" value="high"/>
  <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
  <param name="pluginspace"
  value="http://www.macromedia.com/go/getflashplayer"/>
</object>

```

---

## ol

An ordered list (<ol>) is a list of items sorted by sequence or order of importance.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are:  <b>yes</b> Indicates compact spacing. <b>no</b> Indicates expanded spacing.	(yes   no)	"yes"	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Here are the colors of the rainbow in order of appearance from top to bottom:

```
<ol>
<li>Red</li>
<li>Orange</li>
<li>Yellow</li>
<li>Green</li>
<li>Blue</li>
<li>Indigo</li>
<li>Violet</li>
</ol>
```

---

## oper

The operator (<oper>) element defines an operator within a syntax definition. Typical operators are equals (=), plus (+) or multiply (\*). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether a variable is optional, required, or default. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required   default	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Adding</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var>
</delim>=</delim><kwd>something</kwd>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

---

## option

The <option> element describes an option that can be used to modify a command (or something else, like a configuration). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

something <option>/modifier</option>

---

## othermeta

The <othermeta> element can be used to identify properties not otherwise included in <metadata> and assign name/content values to those properties. The name attribute identifies the property and the content attribute specifies the property’s value. The values in this attribute are output as HTML metadata elements, and have no defined meaning for other possible outputs such as PDF.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Submit the object as part of a form.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
content	The value for the property named in the name attribute.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	No
translate-content	Indicates whether the content attribute of the defined metadata property should be translated or not.	yes   no	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<othermeta name="ThreadWidthSystem" content="metric"/>

---

## p

A paragraph element (<p>) is a block of text containing a single main idea.



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>

It is probable that <q>temporary</q> or <q>new</q> stars, as these wonderful apparitions are called, really are <term>conflagrations</term>; not in the sense of a bonfire or a burning house or city, but in that of a sudden eruption of <i>inconceivable</i> heat and light, such as would result from the stripping off the shell of an encrusted sun or the crashing together of two mighty orbs flying through space with a hundred times the velocity of the swiftest cannon-shot.</p>

---

## param

The parameter (<param>)element specifies a set of values that may be required by an <object> at runtime. Any number of <param> elements may appear in the content of an object in any order, but must be placed at the start of the content of the enclosing object. This element is comparable to the XHTML <param> element.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Submit the object as part of a form.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valuetype	Specifies the type of the value attribute. Allowed values are: data, ref or object. A value of data means that the value will be evaluated and passed to the object's implementation as a string. A value of ref indicates that the value of valuetype is a URL that designates a resource where run-time values are stored. This allows support tools to identify URLs that are given as parameters. A value of object indicates that the value of valuetype is an identifier that refers to an object declaration in the document. The identifier must be the value of the ID attribute set for the declared object element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	This attribute specifies the content type of the resource designated by the value attribute only in the case where <i>valuetype</i> is set to "ref". This attribute thus specifies for the user agent, the type of values that will be found at the URI designated by value.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (No default type)	
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Output processors may need to modify data to enable compatible function across various browsers, so these examples are only representative:

```

<p>Cutting the keys from the system unit:</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
  codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
  flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
  data="cutkey370.swf"
  type="application/x-shockwave-flash"
  height="280"
  width="370"
  id="cutkey370">
  <desc>A description of the task</desc>
  <param name="movie" value="cutkey370.swf"/>
  <param name="quality" value="high"/>
  <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
</object>

<p>What's EIM?</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
  codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
  flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
  data="eim.swf"
  height="400"
  width="500"
  id="eim">
  <desc>Some great, glorious info</desc>

```

```

<param name="movie" value="eim.swf"/>
<param name="quality" value="high"/>
<param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
<param name="pluginspace"
value="http://www.macromedia.com/go/getflashplayer"/>
</object>

```

## parml

The parameter list (<parml>) element contains a list of terms and definitions that describes the parameters in an application programming interface. This is a special kind of definition list that is designed for computer parameters. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are:  <b>yes</b> Indicates compact spacing. <b>no</b> Indicates expanded spacing.	(yes   no)	"yes"	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<parml>
<plentry>
<pt><synph><kwd>from</kwd><delim> </delim><var>this</var></synph></pt>
<pd>copy from somewhere</pd>
</plentry>
</parml>

```

```

<pt><synph><kwd>to</kwd><delim> </delim><var>that</var></synph></pt>
<pd>to somewhere else</pd>
</plentry>
</parml>

```

---

## parmname

When referencing the name of an application programming interface parameter within the text flow of your topic, use the parameter name (<parmname>) element to markup the parameter. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Use <cmdname>config</cmdname> to update the <parmname>/env</parmname> field value.

---

## pd

A parameter definition, within a parameter list entry, is enclosed by the <pd> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### Markup Example

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {
```

where

**pList1**

is the first variable declaration passed to methodName

**pList2**

is the second variable declaration passed to methodName

### Markup Equivalent

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
<codeblock>returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {</codeblock>
```

where

```
<parml>
```

```
<plentry>
```

```
<pt>pList1</pt>
```

```
<pd>is the first variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
```

```
</plentry>
```

```
<plentry>
```

```
<pt>pList2</pt>
```

```
<pd>is the second variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
```

```
</plentry>
```

```
</parml>
```

---

## permissions

The <permissions> empty prolog element can indicate any preferred controls for access to a topic. Topics can be filtered based on the permissions element. This capability depends on your output formatting process.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
view	Defines the classifications of viewers allowed to view the document. Allowable values are:  <b>internal</b> For internal use only. <b>classified</b> For a certain group, only. <b>all</b> The world. <b>entitled</b> Special folks, only.	(internal   classified   all   entitled)	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
<permissions view="entitled"/>
...
```

## ph

The phrase (<ph>) element is used to organize content for reuse or conditional processing (for example, when part of a paragraph applies to a particular audience). It can be used by future specializations of DITA to apply specific processing or formatting to marked up phrases.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This was not changed. <ph rev="v5r2">This was updated.</ph> This was not.

## platform

The <platform> metadata element contains a description of the operating system and/or hardware related to the product being described by the <prodinfo> element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <prodinfo>
      <prodname>Transcription Assistant</prodname>
      <vrmlist><vrmlist version="1" release="3" modification="1"/></vrmlist>
      <platform>AIX</platform>
    </prodinfo>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

## plentry

The parameter list entry element (<plentry>) contains one or more parameter terms and definitions (pd and pt). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

## Markup Example

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {
```

where

### pList1

is the first variable declaration passed to methodName

### pList2

is the second variable declaration passed to methodName

## Markup Equivalent

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
<codeblock>returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {</codeblock>
```

where

```
<parml>
```

### <p1entry>

```
<pt>pList1</pt>
```

```
<pd>is the first variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
```

### </p1entry>

### <p1entry>

```
<pt>pList2</pt>
```

```
<pd>is the second variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
```

### </p1entry>

```
</parml>
```

---

## postreq

The <postreq> element describes steps or tasks that the user should do after the successful completion of the current task. It is often supported by links to the next task or tasks in the <related-links> section.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<postreq>Notify the proctor upon completing this self-test.</postreq>

## pre

The preformatted element (<pre>) preserves line breaks and spaces entered manually by the author in the content of the element, and also presents the content in a monospaced type font (depending on your output formatting processor).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <lines>, and on elements derived from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED ‘preserve’	Yes
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

MEMO: programming team fun day  
Remember to bring a kite, softball glove, or other favorite outdoor accessory to tomorrow's fun day outing at Zilker Park. Volunteers needed for the dunking booth.

## prereq

The pre-requisite (<prereq>) section of a task should document things the user needs to know or do before starting the current task. Prerequisite links will be placed in a list after the related-links section; on output the <prereq> links from the related-links section are added to the <prereq> section.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <prereq>Before creating a new SQLJ file, you must
      log in to the SQLJ server.</prereq>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

## prodinfo

The <prodinfo> metadata element in the prolog contains information about the product or products that are the subject matter of the current topic.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prodinfo>
  <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
  <vrmlist><vrmlist version="v5r2"/></vrmlist>
  <prognum>5412-SS1</prognum>
  <featnum>135</featnum>
  <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

---

## prolog

The <prolog> element contains information about the topic as a whole (for example, author information or subject category) that is either entered by the author or machine-maintained. Much of the metadata inside the <prolog> will not be displayed with the topic on output, but may be used by processes that generate search indexes or customize navigation.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <audience type="user" job="using" experiencelevel="novice"/>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

---

## propdesc

The <propdesc> element is used to provide a short description of the property type and its listed values (or just the value).

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<properties>
  <property>
    <proptype>type</proptype>
    <propvalue>value</propvalue>
    <propdesc>description</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>
```

---

## properties

The <properties> element gives a list of properties for the subject of the current topic, for example whether a class is public or protected. Each property can include the type, value, and a description. The typical rendering is usually in a table-like format. To represent multiple values for a type, just create additional property elements and use only the <propvalue> element (and <propdesc> when needed) for each successive value.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns <b>for print output</b> . The values are totaled and made a percent. For example: relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*" <p>causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.</p> relcolwidth="90* 150*" <p>causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking (not currently supported). Columns are identified by a comma-delimited list of numbers (for example: 1,3).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### <properties>

```

<property>
  <proptype>color</proptype>
  <propvalue>red</propvalue>
  <propdesc>depicts anger</propdesc>

```

```

</property>
<property>
  <propvalue>green</propvalue>
  <propdesc>depicts permission</propdesc>
</property>
</properties>

```

---

## property

The <property> element represents a property of the current topic's subject. For example, if the current topic is a class, the property might show that the class is protected rather than public. It contains three optional elements: type, value, and description.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<properties>
  <property>
    <proptype>type</proptype>
    <propvalue>value</propvalue>
    <propdesc>description</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>

```

---

## prophead

The prophead element supports regular headings for the properties element.

more about this element

### Attributes

Same as for strow.

## Examples

A properties section with a prophead looks like:

Type	Value	Description
integer	42	The answer to all the questions in the universe.
keyword	default, rect, circle, poly	The values allowed for an image map shape.

---

## propdeschd

The propdeschd element supports regular headings for the description column of a properties table.

### Attributes

Same as for property.

---

## proptyped

The proptyped element supports regular headings for the type column of a properties table.

### Attributes

Same as for property.

---

## propvaluehd

The propvaluehd element supports regular headings for the value column of a properties table.

### Attributes

Same as for property.

---

## proptype

The proptype element describes the type of property.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<properties>
  <property>
    <proptype>type</proptype>
    <propvalue>value</propvalue>
    <propdesc>description</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>

```

---

## propvalue

The <propvalue> element indicates the value or values for the current property type. You can put values in separate rows if they need separate descriptions, and just leave the <proptype> element blank.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<properties>
  <property>
    <proptype>type</proptype>
    <propvalue>value</propvalue>
    <propdesc>description</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>

```

## pt

A parameter term, within a parameter list entry, is enclosed by the <pt> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### Markup Example

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {
```

where

#### pList1

is the first variable declaration passed to methodName

#### pList2

is the second variable declaration passed to methodName

### Markup Equivalent

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
<codeblock>returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {</codeblock>
where
```

```

<parml>
  <plentry>
    <pt>pList1</pt>
    <pd>is the first variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
  </plentry>
  <plentry>
    <pt>pList2</pt>
    <pd>is the second variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
  </plentry>
</parml>

```

---

## publisher

The <publisher> metadata element contains the name of the person, company, or organization responsible for making the content or subject of the topic available.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink representing a resource that defines the person or company named in the parent element. Typically you would use this attribute to cite the URL for the named entity's "home page." The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<publisher>AJ Printing Inc.</publisher>
```

---

## q

A quotation element (<q>) indicates content quoted from another source. This element is used for short quotes which are displayed inline. Use the long quote element (<lq>) for quotations that should be set off from the surrounding text.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

George said, <q>Disengage the power supply before servicing the unit.</q>

---

## refbody

The <refbody> element is a container for the main content of the reference topic. Reference topics limit the body structure to tables (both simple and standard), property lists, syntax sections, and generic sections and examples, in any sequence or number.

Reference topics represent the kind of information that users typically consult to understand programming objects, statements, commands, configuration file options, recipes, terminological descriptions, and so forth.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE reference SYSTEM "../../build/dita/dtd/reference.dtd">
<reference id="refexample">
  <title>A reference topic</title>
  <refbody>
    <refsyn>Describe command or api syntax here, possibly
    using <code>&lt;synph> or <code>&lt;syntax> markup for explicit
    definition of syntax or prototype construction.</refsyn>
    <section>
      <title>Some section title</title>
    </section>
    <properties>
      <property>
        <proptype>type</proptype>
        <propvalue>value</propvalue>
        <propdesc>description</propdesc>
      </property>
    </properties>
  </refbody>
</reference>

```

---

## reference

The <reference> element defines a top-level container for a reference topic. Reference topics document programming constructs or facts about a product. Examples of reference topics include language elements, class descriptions, commands, functions, statements, protocols, types, declarators, operands, and API information, which provide quick access to facts, but no explanation of concepts or procedures. Reference topics have the same high-level structure as any other topic type, with a title, short description, and body. Within the body, reference topics are typically organized into one or more sections, property lists, and tables. The reference topic type provides general rules that apply to all kinds of reference information, using elements like <refsyn> for syntax or signatures, and <properties> for lists of properties and values.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. For example, you could create a series of topics in a compound (dita) or nested context for authoring convenience and then reference each topic individually into a new target location. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first topic into the calling topic markup that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for normal file links. To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Target elsewhere in the same file: conref="#topicid"</p> <p>In different file: conref="filename.xml"</p> <p>In different compound file: conref="filename.xml#topicid"</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value “es-es,” then the label on the note, which is normally output as “Note” is now output in Spanish as “Nota.” A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the DTD that is in use.	CDATA	“1.0” (version dependent; will increase)	Yes
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD.	CDATA	ui-d hi-d pr-d sw-d	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE reference SYSTEM "../..//build/dita/dtd/reference.dtd">
<reference id="refexample">
  <title>A reference topic</title>
  <refbody>
    <refsyn>Describe command or api syntax here, possibly
    using &lt;synph> or &lt;syntax> markup for explicit
    definition of syntax or prototype construction.
    </refsyn>
    <section>
      <title>Some section title</title>
    </section>
    <properties>
      <property>
        <proptype>type</proptype>
        <propvalue>value</propvalue>
        <propdesc>description</propdesc>
      </property>
    </properties>
  </refbody>
</reference>
```

## refsyn

The `<refsyn>` element is a special section inside a reference topic. The section often contains syntax or signature content (for example, a command-line utility's calling syntax, or an API's signature). The `<refsyn>` contains a brief, possibly diagrammatic description of the subject's interface or high-level structure.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at <i>"%univ-atts;"</i> on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See <i>"outputclass processing"</i> on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at <i>"%global-atts;"</i> on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE reference SYSTEM "../..//build/dita/dtd/reference.dtd">
<reference id="refexample">
  <title>A reference topic</title>
  <refbody>
    <refsyn><syntaxdiagram>
<title>Adding</title>
<groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var><delim>=</delim>
<kwd>something</kwd></groupseq></syntaxdiagram></refsyn>
    <section>
      <title>Some section title</title>
    </section>
    <properties>
      <property>
        <proptype>type</proptype>
        <propvalue>value</propvalue>
        <propdesc>description</propdesc>
      </property>
    </properties>
  </refbody>
</reference>
```

## related-links

The related information links of a topic (<related-links> element) are stored in a special section following the body of the topic. After a topic is processed into its final output form, the related links are usually displayed at the end of the topic, although some Web-based help systems might display them in a separate navigation frame.

Prerequisite links are an exception (that is, in which *importance="required"* and the role is compatible—not ancestor/parent/child/descendant/next). These get sorted after the <shortdesc> (all topics) or after the <prereq> section (for tasks).

### Processing notes:

1. PDF output ignores hierarchical links, for example ancestor/parent/child/descendant/next/previous/sibling.
2. Links not in a <linklist> will be sorted on output based on type, role, and importance.
3. The value of the *format* attribute defaults to "dita" unless the attribute *scope="external"*, when format is assumed to be not-dita.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%rel-atts; (type, role, otherrole)	A set of related attributes, described at "%rel-atts;" on page 173	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is “dita”.</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as “topic.”</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to “dita”</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the “.” (for example, in a link to file “readme.txt”, use “txt” as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current topic and the target resource. Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content, and should be accessed and copied to the output directory. Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. The default is local.	(local   peer   external)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>...</taskbody>
  <related-links>
    <link href="#concept"><linktext>Some little concept</linktext></link>
  </related-links>
</task>

```

## relcell

A <relcell> element is a cell in the relationship table. The <topicref> elements it contains will be related to topicrefs in other cells of the same row. By default, topicrefs in the same cell are not related to each other, unless you change the relcell’s collection-type attribute to indicate that they are related.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See “%topicref-atts;” on page 177.	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for “concept”, one for “task”, and one for “reference”. Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.xml. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.xml and batfeeding.xml. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.xml and bathistory.xml.

```

<map>
  <reltable>
    <relheader>
      <relcolspec type="concept">
        <relcolspec type="task">
          <relcolspec type="reference">
        </relheader>
      <relrow>
        <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
        <relcell><topicref href="batcaring.dita"/><topicref href="batfeeding.dita"/></relcell>

```

```

    <relcell><topicref href="batguano.dita"/><topicref
    href="bathistory.dita"/></relcell>
  </relrow>
</reltable>
</map>

```

---

## relcolspec

A column definition in the relationship table. You can use <relcolspec> column definitions to set defaults for the attributes of <topicref> elements in the column. For example, you can set type="concept" to treat all untyped <topicref> elements in the column as concepts.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See “%topicref-atts;” on page 177.	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for "concept", one for "task", and one for "reference". Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.xml. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.xml and batfeeding.xml. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.xml and bathistory.xml.

```

<map>
  <reltable>
    <relheader>
      <relcolspec type="concept">
      <relcolspec type="task">
      <relcolspec type="reference">
    </relheader>
    <relrow>
      <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
      <relcell><topicref href="batcaring.dita"/><topicref
      href="batfeeding.dita"/></relcell>
      <relcell><topicref href="batguano.dita"/><topicref
      href="bathistory.dita"/></relcell>
    </relrow>
  </reltable>
</map>

```

---

## relheader

The <relheader> element is a row of column definitions (<relcolspec> elements) in a relationship table. Each table can have only one set of column definitions.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for “concept”, one for “task”, and one for “reference”. Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.xml. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.xml and batfeeding.xml. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.xml and bathistory.xml.

```
<map>
<reltable>
  <relheader>
    <relcolspec type="concept">
    <relcolspec type="task">
    <relcolspec type="reference">
  </relheader>
  <relrow>
    <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
    <relcell><topicref href="batcaring.dita"/><topicref href="batfeeding.dita"/></relcell>
    <relcell><topicref href="batguano.dita"/><topicref href="bathistory.dita"/></relcell>
  </relrow>
</reltable>
</map>
```

---

## relrow

A <relrow> is a row in the relationship table. This creates a relationship between the cells in the row, which will end up expressed as links among the <topicref> elements in the cells.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for “concept”, one for “task”, and one for “reference”. Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.xml. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.xml and batfeeding.xml. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.xml and bathistory.xml.

```

<map>
  <reltable>
    <relheader>
      <relcolspec type="concept">
      <relcolspec type="task">
      <relcolspec type="reference">
    </relheader>
    <relrow>
      <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
      <relcell><topicref href="batcaring.dita"/><topicref
href="batfeeding.dita"/></relcell>
      <relcell><topicref href="batguano.dita"/><topicref
href="bathistory.dita"/></relcell>
    </relrow>
  </reltable>
</map>

```

## reltable

The relationship table (<reltable>) defines relationships between topics, based on the familiar table model of rows (<relrow>), columns (<relheader>), and cells (<relcell>). The <relcell> elements can contain <topicref> elements, which are then related to other <topicref> elements in the same row (although not necessarily in the same cell). By default, the contents of a <reltable> element are not output for navigation or TOC purposes, and are used only to define relationships that can be expressed as topic-to-topic links.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
title	An identifying title for this element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts-no-toc; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, print, search, chunk)	A related set of attributes. See “%topicref-atts-no-toc;” on page 180.	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for “concept”, one for “task”, and one for “reference”. Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.xml. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.xml and batfeeding.xml. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.xml and bathistory.xml.

```

<map>
  <reltable>
    <relheader>
      <relcolspec type="concept">
      <relcolspec type="task">
      <relcolspec type="reference">

```

```

</relheader>
<relrow>
  <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
  <relcell><topicref href="batcaring.dita"/><topicref
href="batfeeding.dita"/></relcell>
  <relcell><topicref href="batguano.dita"/><topicref
href="bathistory.dita"/></relcell>
</relrow>
</reltable>
</map>

```

---

## repsep

The repeat separator (<repsep>) element defines a group of syntax elements that can (or should) be repeated. If the <repsep> element contains a separator character, such as a plus (+), this indicates that the character must be used between repetitions of the syntax elements. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether the element it modifies is optional or required. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## required-cleanup

A <required-cleanup> element is used as a placeholder for migrated elements that cannot be appropriately tagged without manual intervention. As the element name implies, the intent for authors is to clean up the contained material and eventually get rid of the <required-cleanup> element. Authors should not insert this element into documents.

**Note:** Because the content of <required-cleanup> is not considered to be verified data, **DITA processors are required to strip this element from output by default.** A runtime flag *may* be provided to allow a draft view of migrated content in context.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
remap	Indicates the element that the contents of the required-cleanup element were mapped from (provides an idea about what the new intent should be).	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Presuming an original HTML document had contained some content within a <center> tag (for which there is no clear migrational equivalent in DITA), the following might be the result that is valid within an XML editor, but which requires an author to decide how to better tag or revise this original content:

```
<section>
  <title>Some section title</title>
  <required-cleanup remap="center">Some original content migrated
    from a &lt;center> tag.</required-cleanup>
</section>
```

---

## resourceid

The <resourceid> element provides an identifier for applications that require them in a particular format, when the normal id attribute of the topic can't be used. Each resourceid entry should be unique. It is one of the metadata elements that can be included within the prolog of a topic, along with document tracking and product information, etc. The element has no content, but takes an *id* attribute or an *appname* attribute.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
appname	Contains the name of the application with which the topic is associated.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<resourceid id="fred" appname="sqlid00375"/>
```

---

## result

The <result> element describes the expected outcome for the task as a whole.

**Note:** If this is the outcome of a specific step, put this in the <stepresult> element instead.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
    You cannot add #sqlj statements directly in the Source pane of the
    Workbench.</context>
    <result>The SQLJ file is successfully created when the SQLJ server
    displays the "File Created" dialog.</result>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

---

## revised

The <revised> element in the prolog is used to maintain tracking dates that are important in a topic development cycle, such as the last modification date, the original availability date, and the expiration date.



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
modified	The last modification date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
golive	The publication or general availability (GA) date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
expiry	The date when the information should be retired or refreshed, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
  <critdates>
    <created date="1/1/1999" golive="2/15/1999" expiry="9/9/9999"/>
    <revised modified="3/3/2003" golive="2/3/2002" expiry="9/9/9999"/>
  </critdates>
</prolog>
```

---

## row

The <row> element contains a single row in a table <tgroup>.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are:  <b>top</b> Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell).  <b>bottom</b> Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell).  <b>middle</b> Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell).	(top   bottom   middle)	"top"	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<table>
<tgroup cols="2">
<colspec colnum="1" colname="col1" colwidth="100*"/>
<colspec colnum="2" colname="col2" colwidth="100*"/>
<thead>
<row>
<entry colname="col1">Type style</entry>
<entry colname="col2">Elements used</entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry colname="col1">Bold</entry>
<entry colname="col2">b</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry colname="col1">Italic</entry>
<entry colname="col2">i</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry colname="col1">Underlined</entry>
<entry colname="col2">u</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>

```

---

## screen

The <screen> element contains or refers to a textual representation of a computer screen or user interface panel (window).

Use <screen> to contain representations of text-based online panels, text consoles ("term" or "curses" windows, for example), or other text-based user interface components. The default print representation is to enclose the screen within a box, suggesting a computer display screen. In contrast to graphical screen captures normally used to represent GUI parts (see the image element description), this element specifically supports constructions for which text is the primary content.

This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <line>, and on elements derived from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED 'preserve'	Yes
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This example demonstrates using the <screen> element to represent a DOS edit session, where this code:

```
<p>Type "edit" after the command line prompt and press Enter. The following editing interface will be displayed.</p>
<screen>
```



---

## section

The <section> element represents an organizational division in a topic. Sections are used to organize subsets of information that are directly related to the topic. For example, the titles **Reference Syntax**, **Example** and **Properties** might represent section-level discourse within a topic about a command-line process—the content in each section relates uniquely to the subject of that topic. Multiple sections within a single topic do not represent a hierarchy, but rather peer divisions of that topic. Sections cannot be nested. A section may have an optional title.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<reference id="reference">
  <title>Copy Command</title>
  < refbody>
    <section>
      <title>Purpose</title>
      This little command copies
      things.
    </section>
  </refbody>
</reference>
```

---

## sep

The separator (<sep>) element defines a separator character that is inline with the content of a syntax definition. The separator occurs between keywords, operators or groups in a syntax definition. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether the element it modifies is optional or required. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Adding</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><sep></sep><var>two</var><sep></sep></groupseq>
<delim></delim><kwd>something</kwd></groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

## series

The <series> metadata element contains information about the product series that the topic supports.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prodinfo>
  <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
  <vrmlist><vrm version="v5r2"/></vrmlist>
  <series>tSeries</series>
```

```

<prognum>5412-SS1</prognum>
<featnum>135</featnum>
<component>TCP/IP</component>
</proinfo>

```

---

## shape

The shape element defines the shape of a linkable area in an imagemap.

The shape element supports these values:

**rect** Define a rectangular region. If you leave the shape element blank, this is assumed.

**circle** Define a circular region.

**poly** Define a polygonal region.

### default

Indicates the entire diagram. This has been tested to work in Mozilla and Netscape; it does not appear to work in Internet Explorer. Its placement appears to be order dependant. Anything after "default" is hidden in Mozilla and Netscape.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to associate the <keyword> with another topic that provides more details for that particular keyword.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

### Examples

Same as for keyword.

```

<area>
  <shape>rect</shape>
  <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>

```

See also imagemap.

---

## shortcut

The <shortcut> element identifies a keyboard shortcut for a menu or window action. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts, %id-atts; translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

This example:

```
<menucascade>
  <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol><shortcut>P</shortcut>rograms</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

produces the following result: **Start** → **Programs**

---

## shortdesc

The short description (<shortdesc>) element occurs between the topic title and the topic body, as the initial paragraph-like content of a topic. The short description, which represents the purpose or theme of the topic, is also intended to be used as a link preview and for searching.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at “%id-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="abstractexample">
  <title>Abstract Example</title>
  <shortdesc>This documentation addresses messages...</shortdesc>
  <taskbody>...</taskbody>
</task>

```

---

## simpletable

The <simpletable> element is used for tables that are regular in structure and do not need a caption. Choose the simple table element when you want to show information in regular rows and columns. For example, multi-column tabular data such as phone directory listings or parts lists are good candidates for simpletable. Another good use of simpletable is for information that seems to beg for a “three-part definition list”—just use the keycol attribute to indicate which column represents the “key” or term-like column of your structure.

**DITA insight:** This close match of simpletable to tabular, regular data makes simpletable suitable as the basis for specialized structures such as properties (for programming information) and choice tables (for tasks).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns <b>for print output</b> . The values are totaled and made a percent. For example: relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*" causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. relcolwidth="90* 150*" causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking (not currently supported). Columns are identified by a comma-delimited list of numbers (for example: 1,3).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Create this table using the markup example that follows:

Type style	Elements used
Bold	b
Italic	i
Underlined	u

```
<simplatable>
  <thead>
    <stentry>Type style</stentry>
    <stentry>Elements used</stentry>
  </thead>
  <strow>
    <stentry>Bold</stentry>
    <stentry>b</stentry>
  </strow>
  <strow>
    <stentry>Italic</stentry>
    <stentry>i</stentry>
  </strow>
  <strow>
```

```

<stentry>Underlined</stentry>
<stentry>u</stentry>
</strow>
</simpletable>

```

## sl

The <sl> element contains a simple list of items of short, phrase-like content, such as in documenting the materials in a kit or package.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are:  <b>yes</b> Indicates compact spacing. <b>no</b> Indicates expanded spacing.	(yes   no)	"yes"	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts,, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In a reference topic discussing related modules, the following sample markup could be used:

```

<section><title>Messages</title>
<p>Messages from the ags_open module are identical with messages from:</p>
<sl>
  <sl>ags_read</sl>
  <sl>ags_write</sl>
  <sl>ags_close</sl>
</sl>
</section>

```

---

## sli

A simple list item (<sli>) is a single item in a simple list<sl>. Simple list items have phrase or text content, adequate for describing package contents, for example. When a DITA topic is formatted for output, the items of a simple list are placed each on its own line, with no other prefix such as a number (as in an ordered list) or bullet (as in an unordered list).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<p>Package contents:
<sl>
  <sli>three french hens</sli>
  <sli>two turtledoves</sli>
  <sli>a partridge in a pear tree</sli>
</sl>
</p>
```

---

## source

The <source> element contains a reference to a resource from which the present topic is derived, either completely or in part. The element can contain a description of the resource; the *href* reference can be a string or a URL that points to it.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink representing an external Web resource (URL) from which the present resource is derived. The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax: href="myfile.xml" type="concept" href="mything.pdf" format="pdf"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<prolog>
  <source href="http://www.ibm.com">Somewhere, someplace</source>
</prolog>
```

## state

The <state> element specifies a name/value pair whenever it is necessary to represent a named state that has a variable value. The element is primarily intended for use in specializations to represent specific states (like logic circuit states, chemical reaction states, airplane instrumentation states, and so forth).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Submit the object as part of a form.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step><cmd>Verify the presence of an "on" or high condition at the input gate
(ie, <state name="inflag" value="high"/></cmd></step>
```

---

## stentry

The simpletable entry (<stentry>) element represents a single table cell, like <entry> in <table>. You can place any number of stentry cells in either an sthead element (for headings) or strow element (for rows of data).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
spentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<simpletable>
. . . . .
<strow>
  <stentry>Bold</stentry>
  <stentry>b</stentry>
</strow>
. . .
</simpletable>
```

---

## step

The <step> element represents an action that a user must follow to accomplish a task. Each step in a task must contain a command <cmd> element which describes the particular action the user must do to accomplish the overall task. The step element can also contain information <info>, substeps <substeps>, tutorial information <tutorialinfo>, a step example <stepxmp>, choices <choices> or a stepresult <stepresult>, although these are optional.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether the element it modifies is optional or required. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts;	A set of related attributes, described at select-atts. <b>Note:</b> For this element, the attribute <i>importance</i> has only the values "required" and "optional."			
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not.	yes   no	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es-es," then the label on the note, which is normally output as "Note" is now output in Spanish as "Nota." A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
</context>
<steps>
<step><cmd></cmd></step>
</steps>
</taskbody>
</task>

```

---

## stepresult

The <stepresult> element provides information on the expected outcome of a step. If a user interface is being documented, the outcome could describe a dialog box opening, or the appearance of a progress indicator. Step results are useful to assure a user that they are on track, but should not be used for every step, as this quickly becomes tedious.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step>
  <cmd importance="urgent">Once you have the water place it in the microwave.
  Try not to spill any, as water is very wet.</cmd>
  <substeps>
    <substep importance="required">
      <cmd>Start the Microwave.</cmd>
      <stepxmp>As an example, push the <b>Start</b> button</stepxmp>
      <stepresult importance="normal">The Microwave is running</stepresult>
    </substep>
    <substep importance="optional">
      <cmd>In a minute or two the water will boil.</cmd>
    </substep>
  </substeps>
</step>
```

---

## steps

The <steps> section of a task provides the main content of the task topic. The task is described as a series of steps that the user must follow to accomplish the task. One or more <steps> elements is required inside the <steps> section.

Two or more steps appear as an ordered list. A single step appears as a paragraph.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.</context>
<steps>
<step>
<cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd>
</step>
<step>
<cmd>Enter the first query statement.</cmd>
</step>
</steps>
</taskbody>
</task>

```

---

## steps-unordered

Like the <steps> element, the <steps-unordered> section of a task provides the main content of the task topic, but particularly for cases in which the order of steps may vary from one situation to another. For example, fields of a form can be filled in without particular regard to order as long as the required ones are filled in before submitting the form. One or more steps is required inside the <steps-unordered> section.

Two or more steps appear as an unordered list. A single step appears as a paragraph.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.</context>
    <steps-unordered>
      <step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>
    </steps-unordered>
  </taskbody>
</task>

```

---

## stepxmp

The step example (<stepxmp>) element is used to illustrate a step of a task. The example can be a couple of words, or an entire paragraph.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<step>
  <cmd>Type a name for the widget.</cmd>
  <stepxmp>For example, <userinput>mywidget</userinput></stepxmp>
</step>

```

---

## sthead

The simpletable header (<sthead>) element contains the table’s header row. The header row is optional in a simple table.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<simpletable>
  <sthead>
    <stentry>Type style</stentry>
    <stentry>Elements used</stentry>
  </sthead>
  . . .
</simpletable>

```

## strow

The <simpletable> row (<strow>) element specifies a row in a simple table, like row in a conventional table.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<simplatable id="s1">
  <sthead>
    <stentry>hi</stentry>
    <stentry>there</stentry>
  </sthead>
  <strow>
    <stentry>how</stentry>
    <stentry>are</stentry>
    <stentry>you?</stentry>
  </strow>
</simplatable>

```

---

## sub

A subscript (<sub>) indicates that text should be subscripted, or placed lower in relationship to the surrounding text. Subscripted text is often a smaller font than the surrounding text. Formatting may vary depending on your output process. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The power produced by the electrohydraulic dam was 10<sup>10</sup> more than the older electric plant. The difference was H<sub>2</sub>0.

---

## substep

A <substep> element has the same structure as a <step>, except that it does not allow lists of choices or substeps within it, in order to prevent unlimited nesting of steps.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether the element it modifies is optional or required. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%select-atts;	A set of related attributes, described at select-atts. <b>Note:</b> For this element, the attribute <i>importance</i> has only the values “required” and “optional.”			
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at “%id-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not.	yes   no	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value “es-es,” then the label on the note, which is normally output as “Note” is now output in Spanish as “Nota.” A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<substeps>
<substep><cmd>Hold pencil in a steady, level position.</cmd></substep>
<substep><cmd>Turn handle until resistance diminishes.</cmd>
<info>Note: initially, it may be somewhat difficult to turn the handle if
pencil has never been sharpened before.</info></substep>
<substep><cmd>To determine if pencil is sharp, remove it from the sharpener
and inspect the tip.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>

```

---

## substeps

The <substeps> element allows you to break a step down into a series of separate actions, and should be used only if necessary. Try to describe the steps of a task in a single level of steps. If you need to use more than one level of substep nesting, you should probably rewrite the task to simplify it.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<substeps>
<substep><cmd>Hold pencil in a steady, level position.</cmd></substep>
<substep><cmd>Turn handle until resistance diminishes.</cmd>
<info>Note: initially, it may be somewhat difficult to turn the handle if
pencil has never been sharpened before.</info></substep>
<substep><cmd>To determine if pencil is sharp, remove it from the sharpener
and inspect the tip.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>

```

## sup

The superscript (<sup>) element indicates that text should be superscripted, or vertically raised in relationship to the surrounding text. Superscripts are usually a smaller font than the surrounding text. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the uicontrol tag. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The power produced by the electrohydraulic dam was 10<sup>10</sup> more than the older electric plant. The difference was H<sub>2</sub>.

---

## synblk

The syntax block (<synblk>) element organizes small pieces of a syntax definition into a larger piece. The syntax block element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<synblk>
<groupseq><kwd>this</kwd><sep>-</sep><kwd>is</kwd><sep>-</sep><kwd>a</kwd>
<sep>-</sep><var>test</var></groupseq>
</synblk>
```

---

## synnote

The syntax note (<synnote>) element contains a note (similar to a footnote) within a syntax definition group or fragment. The syntax note explains aspects of the syntax that cannot be expressed in the markup itself. The note will appear at the bottom of the syntax diagram instead of at the bottom of the page. The syntax block element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
callout	Specifies what character is used for the footnote link, for example a number or an alpha character. Numbers are the default. You could also specify a graphic for the footnote callout during output processing.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<groupcomp><var>one</var><var>two</var><var>three</var></groupcomp>
<synnote>My first syntax note.</synnote>
```

---

## synnoteref

The syntax note (<synnoteref>) reference element references a syntax note element (<synnote>) that has already been defined elsewhere in the topic. The same notation can be used in more than one syntax definition. The syntax note reference element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or to another topic in the same file or in another file. The href attribute identifies the destination of the cross-reference link using conventional URL syntax: <pre>href="myfile.xml" type="concept" href="mything.pdf" format="pdf"</pre> <p>If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&amp;#amp;) should be used to indicate that character</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<synnoteref href="#syntaxdiagram/mysyn"/>

---

## synph

The syntax phrase (<synph>) element is a container for syntax definition elements. It is used when a complete syntax definition is not needed, but some of the syntax elements, such as kwd, oper, delim, are used within the text flow of the topic content. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts, %id-atts, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<synph><kwd>format</kwd> <var>volumename</var></synph>

---

## syntaxdiagram

The syntax diagram (<syntaxdiagram>) element is the main container for all the syntax elements that make up a syntax definition. The syntax diagram represents the syntax of a statement from a computer language, or a command, function call or programming language statement. Traditionally, the syntax diagram is formatted with “railroad tracks” that connect the units of the syntax together, but this presentation may differ depending on the output media. The syntax diagram element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice> <var>input-filename</var> <kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice> <var>output-filename</var> <kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

---

## systemoutput

The system output (<systemoutput>) element represents computer output or responses to a command or situation. A generalized element, it represents any kind of output from the computer, so the author may wish to choose more specific markup, such as msgph, for messages from the application. The system output element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>After you type <userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>, the meal planning program will print a <systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput> message. Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan, for example, <userinput>Thursday</userinput>.</p>

## table

The <table> element organizes arbitrarily complex relationships of tabular information. This standard table markup allows column or row spanning and table captions or descriptions. An optional title allowed inside the table element provides a caption to describe the table. See simpletable for a simplified table model that can be specialized to represent more regular relationships of data.

The DITA table is based on the OASIS Exchange Table Model, augmented with DITA attributes which enable it for specialization, conref, and other DITA processing. In addition, the table includes a desc element, which enables table description that is parallel with figure description.

In DITA tables, in place of the expanse, the pgwide attribute is used instead. This attribute has a similar semantic (1=page width; 0=resize to galley or column).

**Note:** The scale attribute represents a stylistic markup property that is maintained for now in tables for legacy purposes. External stylesheets should enable less dependency on this attribute. You should use the scale attribute judiciously in your topics.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at “%display-atts;” on page 171	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	“0”	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	“0”	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
rowheader	This attribute specifies whether the content of the first column in a table contains row headings. In the same way that a column header introduces a table column, the row header introduces the table row. This attribute makes tables whose first column contains row headings more readable on output. Allowable values are:  <b>firstcol</b> The first column contains the row headings.  <b>norowheader</b> Indicates that no column contains row headings. This is the default.	(firstCol   norowheader)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Animal	Gestation Period
Elephant (African and Asian)	19-22 months
Giraffe	15 months
Rhinoceros	14-16 months
Hippopotamus	7 1/2 months

```

<table frame="all">
  <tgroup cols="2">
    <colspec colname="col1" colwidth="3*" />
    <colspec colname="col2" colwidth="2*" />
    <thead>
      <row>
        <entry valign="top">Animal</entry>
        <entry valign="top">Gestation Period</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Elephant (African and Asian)</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">19-22 months</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>

```

```

<row>
  <entry colname="col1">Giraffe</entry>
  <entry colname="col2">15 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
  <entry colname="col1">Rhinoceros</entry>
  <entry colname="col2">14-16 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
  <entry colname="col1">Hippopotamus</entry>
  <entry colname="col2">7 1/2 months</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>

```

---

## task

The <task> element is the top-level element for a task topic. Tasks are the main building blocks for task-oriented user assistance. They generally provide step-by-step instructions that will enable a user to perform a task. A task answers the question of "how to?" by telling the user precisely what to do and the order in which to do it. Tasks have the same high-level structure as other topics, with a title, short description and body.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. For example, you could create a series of topics in a compound (dita) or nested context for authoring convenience and then reference each topic individually into a new target location. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first topic into the calling topic markup that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for normal file links. To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Target elsewhere in the same file:  conref="#topicid"  In different file:  conref="filename.xml"  In different compound file:  conref="filename.xml#topicid"</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value “es-es,” then the label on the note, which is normally output as “Note” is now output in Spanish as “Nota.” A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the DTD that is in use.	CDATA	“1.0” (version dependent; will increase)	Yes
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD.	CDATA	ui-d hi-d pr-d sw-d	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
    </context>
    <steps>
      <step><cmd>Open...</cmd></step>
    </steps>
  </taskbody>
</task>

```

---

## taskbody

The <taskbody> element is the main body-level element inside a task topic. A task body has a very specific structure, with the following elements in this order: <prereq>, <context>, <steps>, <result>, <example> and <postreq>. Each of the body sections are optional.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id=sqlj>
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
    </context>
    <steps>
      <step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>
      <step><cmd>Add your Java source code and SQLJ statements.</cmd></step>
      <step><cmd>Save your file with an .sqlj extension and close the
      editor.</cmd></step>
    </steps>
    <postreq>
      <p>Once you have created a new .sqlj file, import the file into
      your project and translate the file.</p>
      <p>For information on SQLJ syntax, contact your database vendor or
      see <xref href="web.ansi.org/public/std_info.html" type="external"/>.</p>
    </postreq>
  </taskbody>
</task>

```

## tbody

The <tbody> element contains the rows in a table.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are:  <b>top</b> Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell).  <b>bottom</b> Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell).  <b>middle</b> Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell).	(top   bottom   middle)	“top”	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## term

The <term> element identifies words that represent extended definitions or explanations. In future development of DITA, for example, terms might provide associative linking to matching glossary entries.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>The <term>reference implementation</term> of DITA represents the standard, <q>fallback</q> behaviors intended for DITA elements.</p>



---

## tfoot

The table footer (<tfoot>) element precedes the table body (<tbody>) element in a complex table.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are:  <b>top</b> Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell).  <b>bottom</b> Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell).  <b>middle</b> Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell).	(top   bottom   middle)	"top"	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## tgroup

The <tgroup> element in a table contains column, row, spanning, header and footer specifications, and the body (<tbody>) of the table.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
cols	Indicates the number of columns in a <tgroup> in a table.	NMTOKEN	#REQUIRED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	"0"	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are:  <b>left</b> Indicates left alignment of the text.  <b>right</b> Indicates right alignment of the text.  <b>center</b> Indicates center alignment of the text.  <b>justify</b> Justifies the contents to both the left and the right.	(left   right   center   justify   char)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Animal	Gestation Period
Elephant (African and Asian)	19-22 months
Giraffe	15 months
Rhinoceros	14-16 months
Hippopotamus	7 1/2 months

```
<table frame="all">
  <tgroup cols="2">
    <colspec colname="col1" colwidth="3*" />
    <colspec colname="col2" colwidth="2*" />
    <thead>
      <row>
        <entry valign="top">Animal</entry>
        <entry valign="top">Gestation Period</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Elephant (African and Asian)</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">19-22 months</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Giraffe</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">15 months</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```

```

<row>
  <entry colname="col1">Rhinoceros</entry>
  <entry colname="col2">14-16 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
  <entry colname="col1">Hippopotamus</entry>
  <entry colname="col2">7 1/2 months</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>

```

## thead

The table header (<thead>) element precedes the table body (<tbody>) element in a complex table.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are:  <b>top</b> Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell).  <b>bottom</b> Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell).  <b>middle</b> Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell).	(top   bottom   middle)	"top"	No
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The following example shows the desired effect and the code that produced the table header:

Animal	Gestation Period
Elephant (African and Asian)	19-22 months
Giraffe	15 months
Rhinoceros	14-16 months
Hippopotamus	7 1/2 months

```

<table frame="all">
  <tgroup cols="2">
    <colspec colname="col1" colwidth="3*" />
    <colspec colname="col2" colwidth="2*" />
    <thead>
      <row>
        <entry valign="top">Animal</entry>
        <entry valign="top">Gestation Period</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Elephant (African and Asian)</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">19-22 months</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Giraffe</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">15 months</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Rhinoceros</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">14-16 months</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry colname="col1">Hippopotamus</entry>
        <entry colname="col2">7 1/2 months</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>

```

---

## title

The <title> element contains a heading or label for the main parts of a document such as <topic>, <section>, and <example> and for the display elements such as figure (<fig>) and <table>.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at “%id-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<topic id="topic">
  <title>Some little topic</title>
  <body>
    <p>Some discourse.</p>
  </body>
</topic>

```

---

## titlealts

The alternate title element (<titlealts>) is optional, but can occur after the topic title. Two elements can be inserted as sub-elements of <titlealts>: navigation title <navtitle> and search title <searchtitle>. When your DITA topic is transformed to XHTML, the <searchtitle> element is used to create a title element at the top of the resulting XHTML file. This title may differ from the first level heading that shows in the main browser window. In HTML output, the <navtitle> may be used to create navigation panels when your DITA topics are part of an HTML-based help or information system. The design intent is to enable navigation for HTML Help and Eclipse help systems.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at “%id-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<task id="progexample">
  <title>Programming Example</title>
  <titlealts><navtitle>Example of Required Programming</navtitle></titlealts>
  <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>

```

---

## tm

The trademark (<tm>) element in DITA is used to markup and identify a term or phrase that is trademarked. Trademarks include registered trademarks, service marks, slogans and logos.

**Remember:** In your company’s documents, these attributes should only be set with an approved editor that follows corporate rules for nesting trademarks and setting attribute properties. The business rules for indicating and displaying trademarks may differ from company to company and must be enforced by authoring policy and by specific processing.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
trademark	The trademarked term	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tmowner	The trademark owner, for example “IBM Corporation.”	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
tmtpe	The trademark type: trademark, registered trademark, or service mark	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tmclass	Classification of the trademark (is it an IBM trademark, IBM subsidiary trademark, etc). Values can include IBM, IBMSUB, SPECIAL and OTHER.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>The advantages of using <tm trademark="DB2 Universal Database" tmtpe="tm"><tm trademark="DB2" tmtpe="reg" tmclass="ibm">DB2</tm> Universal Database</tm> are well known.</p>

## topic

The <topic> element is the top-level DITA element for a single-subject topic or article. Other top-level DITA elements that are more content-specific are <concept>, <task>, and <reference>.

To support applications that are namespace-aware, DITA DTDs and Schemas provide the following fixed namespaced declarations for topic, and for topic-level elements derived from topic:

```
ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.0"
xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
```

In DTDs, the “ditaarch” prefix is parameterized to enable future specialization.

All DITA elements take the xmlns="" fixed attribute, which puts them into the null namespace by default. This attribute is applied via the %global-atts; group.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. For example, you could create a series of topics in a compound (dita) or nested context for authoring convenience and then reference each topic individually into a new target location. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first topic into the calling topic markup that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for normal file links. To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Target elsewhere in the same file: conref="#topicid"</p> <p>In different file: conref="filename.xml"</p> <p>In different compound file: conref="filename.xml#topicid"</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value “es-es,” then the label on the note, which is normally output as “Note” is now output in Spanish as “Nota.” A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the DTD that is in use.	CDATA	“1.0” (version dependent; will increase)	Yes
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD.	CDATA	ui-d hi-d pr-d sw-d	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```

<topic id="topic">
  <title>Some little topic</title>
  <body>
    <p>Here's a <b><i>cute</i></b>,
    <b>little</b> topic.</p>
    <ul>
      <li>Some item</li>
      <li>Another item</li>
    </ul>
  </body>
</topic>

```

---

## topicmeta

The <topicmeta> element defines the metadata that applies to a topic and the topic's children. When creating links, it can also be used to override the title and short description of the topic. In addition, it can insert index entries through the <keywords> element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
lockmeta	Currently unsupported. Defaults to "yes".	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, the metadata defined by the metadata element applies to the associated <topicref> (bats.xml) and all of its children. The <topicmeta> element contains an audience definition which indicates that bats.xml and its children are of interest to experienced programmers who are troubleshooting.

```

<map>
  <topicref href="bats.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <audience type="programmer" job="troubleshooting" experiencelevel="expert"/>
    </topicmeta>
    <topicref href="batcaring.dita"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batfeeding.dita"></topicref>
  </topicref>
</map>

```



---

## topicref

The <topicref> element designates a topic (such as a concept, task, or reference) as a link in a DITA map. A <topicref> can contain other<topicref> elements, allowing you to express navigation or table-of-contents hierarchies, as well as implying relationships between the containing <topicref> and its children. You can set the collection-type of a container <topicref> to determine how its children are related to each other. Relationships end up expressed as links in the output (with each participant in a relationship having links to the other participants).

You can fine tune the output from your map by setting different attributes on topicrefs: for example, the *linking* attribute controls how its relationships to other topicrefs are expressed as links, and the *toc* attribute controls whether the topicref shows up in TOC or navigation output.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of a container in a toc.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or to another topic in the same file or in another file. The href attribute identifies the destination of the cross-reference link using conventional URL syntax:  <code>href="myfile.xml" type="concept"</code> <code>href="mything.pdf" format="pdf"</code>  If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&#amp;) should be used to indicate that character	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
query	Lists query criteria for topicref, or uses topicref's metadata as query criteria. The query pulls in matching topics under the current one if the title is present, or replaces the current location if title is not present.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
conref	[TO BE DEVELOPED--description for conref to a topicref]	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. <b>Note:</b> The copied files will appear in search results as near-duplicates of the original, with only their related links serving to differentiate them.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See “%topicref-atts;” on page 177.	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not.	yes   no	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value “es-es,” then the label on the note, which is normally output as “Note” is now output in Spanish as “Nota.” A list of supported values is given in xml:lang values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

In this example, there are six topicrefs. They are nested and have a hierarchical relationship. Bats.xml is the parent topic and the other topics are its children.

```
<map title="Bats" Bats
  <topicref href="bats.dita" type="topic">
    <topicref href="batcaring.dita" type="task"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batfeeding.dita" type="task"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batsonar.dita" type="concept"></topicref>
    <topicref href="batguano.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
    <topicref href="bathistory.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

## topichead

The <topichead> element provides a title-only entry in a navigation map, as an alternative to the fully-linked title provided by the <topicref> element.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of a container in a toc.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. For example, you could create a &lt;note&gt; in a topic and then reference its ID (using conref) from a &lt;note&gt; in another topic. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first note into the note that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for what HTML calls a "fragment identifier"—a required "#" separator separates an optional filename from the fully qualified id (in the form topicid/elementid). To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Local target: conref="#topicid/elementid"</p> <p>Different file: conref="filename.xml#topicid"</p> <p>In different file: conref="filename.xml#topicid/elementid"</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts;" on page 177.	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 176	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	PE not applicable	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The following markup, for HTML Help output, will produce a book icon that expands into a nested set when toggled.

```
<map title="DITA Reference">
  <topicref href="anchor.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicref href="apiname.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicref href="audience.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicref href="author.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topichead navtitle="Parameter Entity elements">
    <topicref href="global-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
    <topicref href="select-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
    <topicref href="univ-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
    <topicref href="topicref-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  </topichead>
</map>
```

---

## topicgroup

The <topicgroup> element is for creating groups of <topicref> elements without affecting the hierarchy, as opposed to nested <topicref> elements within a <topicref>, which does imply a structural hierarchy. It is typically used outside a hierarchy to identify groups for linking without affecting the resulting toc/navigation output.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. For example, you could create a &lt;note&gt; in a topic and then reference its ID (using conref) from a &lt;note&gt; in another topic. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first note into the note that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for what HTML calls a "fragment identifier"—a required "#" separator separates an optional filename from the fully qualified id (in the form topicid/elementid). To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Local target:  conref="#topicid/elementid"</p> <p>Different file:  conref="filename.xml#topicid"</p> <p>In different file:  conref="filename.xml#topicid/elementid"</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See “%topicref-atts;” on page 177.	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%select-atts; (platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at “%select-atts;” on page 176	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The following markup, for HTML Help output, will produce ....

```
<map title="DITA Reference">
  <topicref href="anchor.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicref href="apiname.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicref href="audience.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicref href="author.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  <topicgroup collection-type="family" toc="no">
    <topicref href="global-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
    <topicref href="select-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
    <topicref href="univ-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
    <topicref href="topicref-atts.dita" type="topic"></topicref>
  </topicgroup>
</map>
```

## tt

The teletype (<tt>) element is used to apply monospaced highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the uicontrol tag. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>Make sure that the screen displays <tt>File successfully created</tt> before proceeding to the next stage of the task.</p>

(Tag purists may delight to point out that this example could be more correctly marked with the msgph element.)

---

## tutorialinfo

The tutorial info (<tutorialinfo>) element contains information that is included in a step when a task is part of a tutorial. The <tutorialinfo> element allows you to turn a task into a learning exercise by including explanatory content about methods for completing the current step. This information is currently included in all output processing results, not just tutorials. It is not for use in tasks that are being used outside of tutorials.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<steps>
  <step>
    <cmd>Do this</cmd>
    <tutorialinfo>In your editor, open the first element and click on
the dialog.</tutorialinfo>
  </step>
  <step>
    <cmd>Do that</cmd>
    <tutorialinfo>Move the framulator into the foobar box.</tutorialinfo>
  </step>
</steps>
```

---

## u

The underline (<u>) element is used to apply underline highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the uicontrol tag. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Beware: `<u>overuse</u>` `<i>of</i>` `<b>highlighting</b>` is sometimes known as font-itis!

## uicontrol

The user interface control (`<uicontrol>`) element represents a button, entry field, menu item, or other object that allows the user to control the interface. This could also include a menu or dialog. For example, use the `<uicontrol>` element inside a `<menucascade>` element when the menu item is nested, such as **File** → **New**. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them. The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.</i>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Press the `<uicontrol>OK</uicontrol>` button.

---

## ul

In an unordered list (<ul>), the order of the list items is not significant. List items are typically styled on output with a "bullet" character, depending on nesting level.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are:  <b>yes</b> Indicates compact spacing. <b>no</b> Indicates expanded spacing.	(yes   no)	"yes"	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized DTDs to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<ul>
<li>This is an item in an unordered list.</li>
<li>To separate it from other items in the list, the
formatter puts a bullet beside it.</li>
<li>The following paragraph, contained in the list item
element, is part of the list item which contains it.
<p>This is the contained paragraph.</p></li>
<li>This is the last list item in our unordered list.</li>
</ul>
```

---

## userinput

The user input (<userinput>) element represents the text a user should input in response to a program or system prompt. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.



## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

<p>After you type <userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>, the meal planning program will print a <systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput> message. Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan, for example, <userinput>Thursday</userinput>.</p>

---

## var

Within a syntax definition, the <var> element defines a variable for which the user must supply content, such as their user name or password. It is represented in output in an italic font. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether a variable is optional, required, or default. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	optional   required   default	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts-no-importance	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177, but without the importance attribute	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

## varname

The variable name (<varname>) element defines a variable that must be supplied to a software application. The variable name element is very similar to the variable (var) element, but variable name is used outside of syntax diagrams, possibly within a message or API description to describe a system variable or environment variable. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<filepath>
  <varname>install-dir</varname>\projects\working<varname>project-dir</varname>
  \source<varname>filename</varname>.java
</filepath>
```

---

## vrn

The vrn empty element contains information about a single product's version, modification, and release, to which the current topic applies.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
version	Indicates the released version number of the product(s) that the document describes.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
release	Contains the product release identifier.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
modification	Indicates when the product described in this topic was last modified.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The recent versions of a mythical product might be logged thus using the vrmlist markup:

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <prodinfo>
      <prodname>Widge-o-matic</prodname>
      <vrmlist>
        <vrn version="1.0" release="2001-03-30" modification="0"/>
        <vrn version="1.0" modification="1" release="2001-10-03"/>
      </vrmlist>
    </prodinfo>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

---

## vrmlist

The <vrmlist> element contains a set of <vrn> elements for logging the version, release, and modification information for multiple products or versions of products to which the topic applies.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The recent versions of a mythical product might be logged thus using the vrmli<sup>s</sup>t markup:

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <prodinfo>
      <prodname>Widge-o-matic</prodname>
      <vrmlis>
        <vrm version="1.0" release="2001-03-30" modification="0"/>
        <vrm version="1.0" modification="1" release="2001-10-03"/>
      </vrmlis>
    </prodinfo>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

## wintitle

The window title `<wintitle>` element represents the title text that appears at the top of a window or dialog, and applies to wizard titles, wizard page titles, and pane titles. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at “%univ-atts;” on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
outputclass	Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See “outputclass processing” on page 185 for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at “%global-atts;” on page 172	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

```
<step>
  <cmd>Click <uicontrol>Configure</uicontrol>.</cmd>
  <stepresult>The <wintitle>Configuration Options</wintitle> window
  opens with your last set of selections highlighted.</stepresult>
</step>
```

---

## xref

Use the cross-reference (<xref>) element to link to a different location within the current topic, or a different topic within the same help system or DITA document. You can also point to external sources, such as Web pages, or to a location in another topic as well. The *href* attribute on the <xref> element is used to create the link pointer, or URL.

Typically it is best to restrict yourself to linking to reference topics where the content of the target is clear from the <xref>'s text, for example API names and their descriptions. With other information types, it may be less clear to the user whether they should follow the link, and often they will, thereby missing important information in following paragraphs. Therefore it is a good idea to use related-links wherever possible.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or to another topic in the same file or in another file. The href attribute identifies the destination of the cross-reference link using conventional URL syntax:  <code>href="myfile.xml" type="concept"</code> <code>href="mything.pdf" format="pdf"</code>  If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&#amp;) should be used to indicate that character	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	Currently not implemented in DITA processors. Provides a key that a process can use to look up associated information.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	<p>Describes the target of a cross-reference and may generate cross-reference text based on that description.</p> <p>Allowed values are:</p> <p><b>fig</b> Indicates a link to a figure.</p> <p><b>table</b> Indicates a link to a table.</p> <p><b>li</b> Indicates a link to an ordered list item.</p> <p><b>fn</b> Indicates a link to a footnote.</p> <p><b>section</b> "section" indicates a link to a section.</p> <p><b>concept, task, reference, topic</b> Cross-reference to a topic type.</p> <p><b>other</b> Indicates a cross-reference to an alternate topic information type (currently unsupported).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Valid types for &lt;link&gt; include topic, concept, task, and reference. Valid types for &lt;xref&gt; also include fig, figgroup, table, li, fn, and section.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The values <b>external</b> and <b>local</b> are deprecated for this attribute, and will be removed in later versions of the DTDs. Use the <i>scope</i> attribute instead to specify these linking semantics.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic.")	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, translate, xml:lang)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 177	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is "dita".</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to "dita"</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	<p>The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current topic and the target resource. Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content, and should be accessed and copied to the output directory. Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. The default is local.</p>	(local   peer   external)	#IMPLIED	No
outputclass	<p>Designates an element style in a local Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) to override whatever style is normally applied. See "outputclass processing" on page 185 for more information.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	<p>A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 172</p>	parameter entity	<i>PE not applicable</i>	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	<i>Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.</i> The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values help the output transforms work correctly with ranges of related content.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Here's an example of a cross-reference to another topic; that topic's title will be used as the link text.

```
<p><xref href="whatsdita.dita#tmmdita"></xref>.</p>
```

Here's an example of a cross-reference to another topic; the supplied text will be used as the link text

```
<p><xref href="whatsdita.dita#tmmdita">Background information about DITA</xref> is provided free of charge.</p>
```

If you are linking to anything within a topic, you should use the following format in the href attribute:  
filename.xml#topicid/elementid

If you are linking within the same file, you can leave off the "filename.xml" part. So, for a section with the ID "mysection", you should use:

```
#topicid/mysection
```

For a list item within that section, assuming the item has an ID of "mylist", use

```
#topicid/mylist
```

Regardless of how deeply the target element is nested, the only important pieces are the ID of the containing topic, and the ID of the target element. IDs in DITA need not be unique within a file, but they must be unique within a topic, so you need to be sure that the topic ID is part of your reference.

If your URL has an ampersand in it; you need to code that using the symbol. For example; for this URL:

```
http://www.ibm.com/docview.wss?rs=757&context=SSVNX5
```

You need to enter the & in the Href attribute as follows:

```
<xref href="http://www.ibm.com/docview.wss?rs=757&context=SSVNX5">Part number SSVNX5</xref>
```



---

## Chapter 2. Sets of attributes by named group

---

### %display-atts;

Display attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes whose values may be used for affecting the display of a topic or its selection by search tools.

In DITA tables, in place of the `expand`, the `pgwide` attribute is used instead. This attribute has a similar semantic (1=page width; 0=resize to galley or column).

#### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scale	<p>Specifies a percentage, selected from an enumerated list, that is used to resize fonts in relation to the normal text size. DITA processing does not support this attribute for XHTML output.</p> <p>The scale attribute provides an acknowledged style-based property directly on DITA elements. It will be deprecated in favor of external style specifications. For the table and fig elements, the intent of the property is to allow authors to adjust font sizes on the content of the containing element, primarily for print accommodation. An image in these contexts is to be scaled only by its own direct scale property. If not specifically scaled, such an image is unchanged by the scale property of its parent table or fig.</p>	(50   60   70   80   90   100   110   120   140   160   180   200)	#IMPLIED	No
frame	<p>Specifies which portion of a border should surround the element. Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>top</b> Draw a line before the element</p> <p><b>bottom</b> Draw a line after the element</p> <p><b>topbot</b> Draw a line both before and after the element</p> <p><b>all</b> Draw a box around the element</p> <p><b>sides</b> Draw a line at each side of the element</p> <p><b>none</b> Don't draw any lines around this element</p> <p>DITA processing for XHTML output supports only top, bottom, and topbot rules.</p>	(top   bottom   topbot   all   sides   none)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
expand	<p>Determines the horizontal placement of the element.</p> <p>For PDF, allowable values are: "page" places the element on the left page margin; "column" aligns the element with the current column margin; "textline" aligns the element with the left margin of the current text line and takes indentation into account.</p> <p>For XHTML, allowable values are textline only. The table surrounds the table data. Column and page set the table width to 100%.</p> <p>For DITA tables, this attribute is replaced instead by <code>pgwide="0 or 1"</code>.</p>	(page   column   textline)	#IMPLIED	No

The `%display-atts;` parameter entity is used within the DITA dtDs as a common definition for attributes that affect presentation of certain elements. Not all of these capabilities have been provided yet for DITA topic processing. A typical example might be:

```
<codeblock scale="90" frame="topbot" expand="page">
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
  Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>
```

---

## **%global-atts;**

Debugging attributes, normally hidden from authoring view.

### **Attributes**

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xtrf	xml-trace-filename, the original filename	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Not applicable
xtrc	xml-trace-counter, an element counter for repositioning editors at a known edit location	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns	null namespace declaration	CDATA	#FIXED	<i>null value</i>

These attributes are normally hidden from authors and exposed only to processing tools or editor macros. Values used in these attributes may be implementation-dependent.

---

## **%id-atts;**

ID attributes (`%id-atts;`) is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes that enable the naming and referencing of elements in a DITA topic: *id* and *conref*.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by link, xref, and conref, and for external applications that refer to DITA content..	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	<p>This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. For example, you could create a &lt;note&gt; in a topic and then reference its ID (using conref) from a &lt;note&gt; in another topic. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first note into the note that has the conref attribute.</p> <p>The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for what HTML calls a "fragment identifier"—a required "#" separator separates an optional filename from the fully qualified id (in the form <code>topicid/elementid</code>). To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.</p> <p>Local target:  <code>conref="#topicid/elementid"</code></p> <p>Different file:  <code>conref="filename.xml#topicid"</code></p> <p>In different file:  <code>conref="filename.xml#topicid/elementid"</code></p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The `%id-atts;` parameter entity is used within the DITA dtDs as a common definition for attributes available to most elements that enable you to name or reference (link to or fetch) the content of particular elements. Not all of these capabilities have been provided yet for DITA topic processing. Some typical examples include:

```
<p id="mainpara">The war cry of Kudzu University, <q id="warcry">To the victor
go the spoils!</q>, is often heard on campus during freshman orientation.</p>
<p id="dullpara">One often hears the cry, <q conref="#topicid/warcry"/>, when
students are competing in intramural sports.</p>
```

---

## **%rel-atts;**

Relational attributes (`<%rel-atts;>`) is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes whose values may be used for representing navigational relationships. These attributes occur only on elements that represent relationships between topics.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	<p>Describes the target of a cross-reference and may generate cross-reference text based on that description.</p> <p>Allowed values are:</p> <p><b>fig</b> Indicates a link to a figure.</p> <p><b>table</b> Indicates a link to a table.</p> <p><b>li</b> Indicates a link to an ordered list item.</p> <p><b>fn</b> Indicates a link to a footnote.</p> <p><b>section</b> "section" indicates a link to a section.</p> <p><b>concept, task, reference, topic</b> Cross-reference to a topic type.</p> <p><b>other</b> Indicates a cross-reference to an alternate topic information type (currently unsupported).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Valid types for &lt;link&gt; include topic, concept, task, and reference. Valid types for &lt;xref&gt; also include fig, figgroup, table, li, fn, and section.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The values <b>external</b> and <b>local</b> are deprecated for this attribute, and will be removed in later versions of the DTDs. Use the <i>scope</i> attribute instead to specify these linking semantics.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic.")	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
role	<p>The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time.</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>parent</b> Indicates a link to a topic that is a parent of the current topic.</p> <p><b>child</b> Indicates a link to a direct child such as a directly nested or dependent topic.</p> <p><b>sibling</b> Indicates a link between two children of the same parent topic.</p> <p><b>friend</b> Indicates a link to a similar topic that is not necessarily part of the same hierarchy.</p> <p><b>next</b> Indicates a link to the next topic in a sequence.</p> <p><b>previous</b> Indicates a link to the previous topic in a sequence.</p> <p><b>cousin</b> Indicates a link to another topic in the same hierarchy that is not a parent, child, sibling, next, or previous.</p> <p><b>ancestor</b> Indicates a link to a topic above the parent topic.</p> <p><b>descendent</b> Indicates a link to a topic below a child topic.</p> <p><b>sample</b> Deprecated.</p> <p><b>external</b> Deprecated--use the scope="external" attribute to indicate external links..</p> <p><b>other</b> Indicates any other kind of relationship or role. Enter that role as the value for the otherrole attribute.</p>	(parent   child   sibling   friend   next   previous   cousin   ancestor   descendant   sample   external   [deprecated] other)	"friend"	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The %rel-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA dtDs as a common definition for attributes available to elements that represent topic-to-topic relationships. Not all of these capabilities have been provided yet for DITA topic processing. Some typical examples include:

```
<link type="task" role="child" href="how2uninst.dita" scope="local"/>
```

## %select-atts;

Attributes that support both filtering and flagging include *platform*, *product*, *audience*, and *otherprops*. Attribute *rev* only lets you flag information that matches a run-time parameter. Attribute *importance* currently provides output effects only for steps (where only the values "optional" and "required" are supported).

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
importance	A range of values that describe an importance or priority attributed to an element. For example, in steps of a task, the attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required. In other contexts or specializations, other values are possible. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. Allowable values are: obsolete, deprecated, optional, default, low, normal, high, recommended, required, urgent.	obsolete   deprecated   optional   default   low   normal   high   recommended   required   urgent	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. Allowable values are: new changed deleted unchanged	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The `%select-atts` parameter entity is used within the DITA dtDs as a common definition for attributes available to most elements for you to enable the content for improved retrieveability or for selection. Not all of these capabilities have been provided yet for DITA topic processing. Some typical examples include:

```
The <keyword platform="Linux">chmod</keyword> command...
<ph product="Whiteknuckle Handsoap">Amalgamated Cleansers get the grime!</ph>
<msgph audience="programmer">Divide by -1 error.</msgph>
<ph otherprops="java">When using Java, use the
  <apiname>com.ibm.obscureclass</apiname> to calculate the value.</ph>
<p importance="recommended" rev="3.2">Update anti-virus software often.</p>
```

## %univ-atts;

Universal attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD.

The `univ-atts` entity includes:

- the attributes in the `select-atts` parameter entity (*platform*, *product*, *audience*, *otherprops*, *importance*, *rev*, *status*)
- the attributes in the `id-atts` parameter entity (*id*, *conref*)
- two additional attributes: *translate* and *xml:lang*.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
<code>%select-atts;</code>	A set of related attributes, described at <code>select-atts</code> : <i>platform</i> , <i>product</i> , <i>audience</i> , <i>otherprops</i> , <i>importance</i> , <i>rev</i> , <i>status</i> .			
<code>%id-atts;</code>	A set of related attributes, described at <code>id-atts</code> : <i>id</i> , <i>conref</i> .			
<code>translate</code>	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not.	yes   no	#IMPLIED	No
<code>xml:lang</code>	Specifies the language of the element content. When no <code>xml:lang</code> value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute <code>xml:lang</code> set to the value "es-es," then the label on the note, which is normally output as "Note" is now output in Spanish as "Nota." A list of supported values is given in <code>xml:lang</code> values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

See examples for the `select-atts` and `id-atts` parameter entries. The `translate` and `xml:lang` attributes identify language-specific words or phrases for specific processing (or non-processing, in the case of `translate="no"`).

```
<p>The cordial response to the question is
<q translate="no" xml:lang="de-de">nein.</q></p>
```

## %topicref-atts;

The `%topicref-atts` parameter entity represents a group of attributes used in numerous map elements: `map`, `topicref`, `relcolspec`, `relicell`, `topichead`, and `topicgroup`. The set is similar to those documented in `topicref-atts-no-toc` but includes the `toc` attribute.

## Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Allowed values are: unordered sequence choice family.	(unordered   sequence   choice   family)	"unordered"	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference and may generate cross-reference text based on that description.  Allowed values are: <b>fig</b> Indicates a link to a figure. <b>table</b> Indicates a link to a table. <b>li</b> Indicates a link to an ordered list item. <b>fn</b> Indicates a link to a footnote. <b>section</b> "section" indicates a link to a section. <b>concept, task, reference, topic</b> Cross-reference to a topic type. <b>other</b> Indicates a cross-reference to an alternate topic information type (currently unsupported). <b>Note:</b> Valid types for <link> include topic, concept, task, and reference. Valid types for <xref> also include fig, figgroup, table, li, fn, and section. <b>Note:</b> The values <b>external</b> and <b>local</b> are deprecated for this attribute, and will be removed in later versions of the DTDs. Use the <i>scope</i> attribute instead to specify these linking semantics.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic.")	No
locktitle	This attribute makes sure the <i>navtitle</i> attribute is used if it is present; if <i>locktitle</i> isn't set to "yes", the <i>navtitle</i> attribute is ignored and text is retrieved from the target  <b>yes</b> The navtitle in the map is used. <b>no</b> Default. The navtitle or title of the topic is used.	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No



Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is "dita".</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to "dita"</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
linking	<p>Defines some specific linking characteristics of a topic.</p> <p><b>targetonly</b> A topic can only be linked to and cannot link to other topics.</p> <p><b>sourceonly</b> A topic cannot be linked to but can link to other topics.</p> <p><b>normal</b> A topic can be linked to and can link to other topics. Use this to override the linking value of a parent topic.</p> <p><b>none</b> A topic cannot be linked to or link to other topics.</p>	(targetonly   sourceonly   normal   none)	#IMPLIED	No
toc	Specifies whether a topic appears in the table of contents (toc). This value is set to no.			No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
print	Specifies whether the topic should be included in a portable document format (PDF) file.  <b>yes</b> Include the topic in a PDF file. <b>no</b> Do not include the topic in a PDF file.	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No
search	Currently not used.  <b>yes</b> <b>no</b>	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No
chunk	Currently not used.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

---

## %topicref-atts-no-toc;

The %topicref-atts-no-toc; parameter entity represents the set of attributes used in the reltable map element. The set is similar to those documented in topicref-atts but for <reltable> the *toc* attribute defaults to “no”. For the other elements that use the %topicref-atts; group declaration, the *toc* attribute doesn’t have a default; they can inherit their *toc* value from the nearest container, otherwise it functions upon output as if set to “yes”.

### Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Allowed values are: unordered sequence choice family.	(unordered   sequence   choice   family)	“unordered”	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	<p>Describes the target of a cross-reference and may generate cross-reference text based on that description.</p> <p>Allowed values are:</p> <p><b>fig</b> Indicates a link to a figure.</p> <p><b>table</b> Indicates a link to a table.</p> <p><b>li</b> Indicates a link to an ordered list item.</p> <p><b>fn</b> Indicates a link to a footnote.</p> <p><b>section</b> "section" indicates a link to a section.</p> <p><b>concept, task, reference, topic</b> Cross-reference to a topic type.</p> <p><b>other</b> Indicates a cross-reference to an alternate topic information type (currently unsupported).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Valid types for &lt;link&gt; include topic, concept, task, and reference. Valid types for &lt;xref&gt; also include fig, figgroup, table, li, fn, and section.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The values <b>external</b> and <b>local</b> are deprecated for this attribute, and will be removed in later versions of the DTDs. Use the <i>scope</i> attribute instead to specify these linking semantics.</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic.")	No
locktitle	<p>This attribute makes sure the <i>navtitle</i> attribute is used if it is present; if <i>locktitle</i> isn't set to "yes", the <i>navtitle</i> attribute is ignored and text is retrieved from the target</p> <p><b>yes</b> The navtitle in the map is used.</p> <p><b>no</b> Default. The navtitle or title of the topic is used.</p>	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	<p>The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The default format is "dita".</p> <p>Allowable values are:</p> <p><b>dita</b> The format of the linked-to resource is native DITA. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."</p> <p><b>html</b> The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.</p> <p><b>pdf</b> The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).</p> <p><b>mapref</b> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy</p> <p><b>(no value)</b> Defaults to "dita"</p> <p><b>(for anything else)</b> Use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value)</p>	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
linking	<p>Defines some specific linking characteristics of a topic.</p> <p><b>targetonly</b> A topic can only be linked to and cannot link to other topics.</p> <p><b>sourceonly</b> A topic cannot be linked to but can link to other topics.</p> <p><b>normal</b> A topic can be linked to and can link to other topics. Use this to override the linking value of a parent topic.</p> <p><b>none</b> A topic cannot be linked to or link to other topics.</p>	(targetonly   sourceonly   normal   none)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
print	Specifies whether the topic should be included in a portable document format (PDF) file.  <b>yes</b> Include the topic in a PDF file.  <b>no</b> Do not include the topic in a PDF file.	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No
search	Currently not used.  <b>yes</b>  <b>no</b>	(yes   no)	#IMPLIED	No
chunk	Currently not used.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No



---

## Chapter 3. Appendix

---

### xml:lang values

The allowed xml:lang values are based on ISO-3166 Country Codes and RFC 3066 Language Codes (see W3C: Language tagging in HTML and XML).

#### xml:lang values

Value	Language	Value	Language
ar-eg	Arabic	nl-be	Belgian Dutch
fr-be	Belgian French	pt-br	Brazilian Portuguese
bg-bg	Bulgarian	ca-es	Catalan
en-ca	Canadian English	fr-ca	Canadian French
hr-hr	Croatian	cs-cz	Czech
da-dk	Danish	nl-nl	Dutch
en-us	US English	et-ee	Estonian
fi-fi	Finnish	fr-fr	French
de-de	German	el-gr	Greek
he-il	Hebrew	hu-hu	Hungarian
is-is	Icelandic	it-it	Italian
ja-jp	Japanese	ko-kr	Korean
lv-lv	Latvian	lt-lt	Lithuanian
mk-mk	Macedonian	no-no	Norwegian
pl-pl	Polish	pt-pt	Portuguese
ro-ro	Romanian	ru-ru	Russian
zh-cn	Simplified Chinese	sr-sp	Serbian
fr-ch	Swiss French	de-ch	Swiss German
it-ch	Swiss Italian	sk-sk	Slovak
sl-si	Slovenian	es-es	Spanish
sv-se	Swedish	zh-tw	Traditional Chinese
th-th	Thai	tr-tr	Turkish
en-gb	UK English		

---

### outputclass processing

During transformation from XML to HTML, the value of outputclass is output instead of the class name ordinarily generated for the element. This new class can then be used by a CSS stylesheet to apply alternate formatting rules to the output HTML document.

For example, if a paragraph element is normally rendered in regular font but a bold paragraph is required, you could put boldpara as a value for the outputclass attribute, and then write a CSS stylesheet

that applies bold formatting to result elements that will have that class value (for example, `.boldpara {font-weight: bold; display: block;}`). The paragraph is then displayed as bold when you view the HTML output using your CSS in a web browser.

---

## **keyref processing**

### **Design note:**

The intent of keyref is to provide indirection to linking information as an alternative to using href for hardcoded paths directly in your content. When you use keyref, you allow different processes to form the linking relationship in different ways: for example, a reviewing process might look up internal address and phone number information for the author, while a publishing process might look up a company address and feedback email address.

This functionality is not yet supported in DITA processing.





Printed in USA